# THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY 

## THE OFFICIAL JOURNAL OF <br> THE FIBON ACCI ASSOCIATION

VOLUME 10


NUMBER 5

CONTENTS
SPECIAL PAGE-CHARGE ISSUE
Pellian Representations . . . . . . . . . L. Carlitz, Richard Scoville and V. E. Hoggatt, Jr. ..... 449
Enumeration of $3 \times 3$ Arrays . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . L. Carlitz ..... 489
Representations for a Special Sequence . . L. Carlitz, Richard Scoville and V. E. Hoggatt, Jr. ..... 499
Special Cases of Fibonacci Periodicity . . . . . . . Judy Kramer and V. E. Hoggatt, Jr. ..... 519
Concavity Properties of Certain Sequences of Numbers L. Carlitz ..... 523
A Conjecture Concerning Lucas Numbers . L. Carlitz ..... 526
Addendum to the Paper
"Fibonacci Representations" . . . . . . . L. Carlitz, Richard Scoville and V. E. Hoggatt, Jr. ..... 527
Sequences, Paths, Ballot Numbers . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . L. Carlitz ..... 531
Some Theorems on Completeness . . . . . . . . . V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., and Bob Chow ..... 551
Fibonacci and Lucas Triangles . . . . . V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., Marjorie Bicknell, and Ellen L. King ..... 555

# THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY 

THE OFFICIAL JOURNAL OF THE FIBONACCI ASSOCIATION

DEVOTED TO THE STUDY
OF INTEGERS WITH SPECIAL PROPERTIES

## EDITORIAL BOARD

H. L. Alder<br>A. P. Hillman<br>V. E. Hoggatt, Jr.<br>Marjorie Bicknell<br>Donald E. Knuth<br>John L. Brown, Jr.<br>D. A. Lind<br>L. Carlitz<br>C. T. Long<br>H. W. Eves<br>M. N. S. Swamy<br>H. W. Gould<br>D. E. Thoro

WITH THE COOPERATION OF
Terry Brennan
Maxey Brooke
Paul F. Byrd
Calvin D. Crabill
T. A. Davis

John H. Halton
A. F. Horadam

Dov Jarden
Stephen Jerbic

L. H. Lange<br>James Maxwell<br>Sister M. DeSales McNabb<br>Gerald Preston<br>D. W. Robinson<br>Azriel Rosenfeld<br>Lloyd Walker<br>Charles H. Wall

The California Mathematics Council

All subscription correspondence should be addressed to Brother Alfred Brousseau, St. Mary's College, California. All checks ( $\$ 6.00$ per year) should be made out to the Fibonacci Association or the Fibonacci Quarterly. Two copies of manuscripts intended for publication in the Quarterly should be sent to Verner E. Hoggatt, Jr., Mathematics Department, San Jose State University, San Jose, California. All manuscripts should be typed, double-spaced. Drawings should be made the same size as they will appear in the Quarterly, and should be done in India ink on either vellum or bond paper. Authors should keep a copy of the manuscript sent to the editors.

The Quarterly is entered as third-class mail at the St. Mary's College Post Office, Calif., as an official publication of the Fibonacci Association.

All articles in this issue are supported by page charges. - Editor

# PELLIAN REPRESENTATIONS 

## L. CARLITZ and RICHARD SCOVILLE

Duke University, Durham, North Carolina
and
VERNER E. HOGGATT, JR.
San Jose State University, San Jose, California

## 1. INTRODUCTION

We define the Pellian numbers by means of

$$
P_{0}=0, \quad P_{1}=1, \quad P_{n+1}=2 P_{n}+P_{n-1} \quad(n \geq 1)
$$

By a Pellian representation of the positive integer N we mean a representation of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
N=\epsilon_{1} P_{1}+\epsilon_{2} P_{2}+\epsilon_{3} P_{3}+\cdots, \tag{1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the $\epsilon_{i}$ are non-negative integers. If the $\epsilon_{i}$ are restricted to the values 0,1 , not all integers N are representable. Indeed we have the sequence of "missing" numbers:

$$
4,9,10,11,16,21,22,23,24,25,26,27,28, \cdots \text {. }
$$

On the other hand we prove that every positive integer N is uniquely representable in the form (1.1) where the $\epsilon_{i}$ satisfy the following conditions:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \epsilon_{1}=0 \text { or } 1 ; \quad \epsilon_{i}=0,1 \text { or } 2 ;  \tag{1.2}\\
& \text { if } \epsilon_{i}=2 \text { then } \epsilon_{i-1}=0 .
\end{align*}
$$

It follows that the sequence of "missing" numbers is infinite.
When (1.2) is satisfied we call (1.1) the canonical representation of $N$. Let $A_{k}$ denote the set of integers N such that

$$
\epsilon_{1}=\cdots=\epsilon_{\mathrm{k}-1}=0, \quad \epsilon_{\mathrm{k}} \neq 0
$$

and let $B_{k}$ denote the set of integers $N$ such that

$$
\epsilon_{1}=\cdots=\epsilon_{\mathrm{k}-1}=0, \quad \epsilon_{\mathrm{k}}=2
$$

As in the previous papers of this series $[1,2,3,4]$, we shall characterize the sets $A_{k}, B_{k}$ ) in terms of certain arithmetic functions. As we shall see below, the discussion is considerably

[^0]more elaborate than that in the case of Fibonacci representations. The number of functions necessary to describe the sets $A_{k}, B_{k}$ is greater than that needed for the corresponding Fibonacci results; moreover some of the relations are more intricate.

To begin with, if N has the canonical representation (1.1) we define
(1.3)

$$
e(N)=\epsilon_{2} P_{1}+\epsilon_{3} P_{2}+\epsilon_{4} P_{3}+\cdots
$$

and
(1.4)

$$
p(N)=\epsilon_{1} P_{2}+\epsilon_{2} P_{3}+\epsilon_{3} P_{4}+\cdots
$$

Then

$$
\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{n}))=\mathrm{n} \quad(\mathrm{n}=1,2,3, \ldots)
$$

however, for some $n$,

$$
\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{n})) \neq \mathrm{n} .
$$

Note that the right member of (1.3) need not be canonical.
Next we define the following six functions:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})=[\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}], \quad \mathrm{b}(\mathrm{n})=[(2+\sqrt{2}) \mathrm{n}] \\
& \mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n})=[(1+\sqrt{2}) \mathrm{n}], \quad \mathrm{d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})=\left[\frac{1}{2}(2+\sqrt{2}) \mathrm{n}\right] \\
& \delta(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{n})+\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n}), \quad \epsilon(\mathrm{n})=\text { complement of } \delta(\mathrm{n})
\end{aligned}
$$

Two (strictly monotone) functions $f_{1}, f_{2}$ from $\underset{\sim}{N}$ to $\underset{\sim}{N}$ are complementary if the sets

$$
\mathrm{f}_{1}(\underset{\sim}{\mathrm{~N}}), \quad \mathrm{f}_{2}(\underset{\sim}{\mathrm{~N}})
$$

constitute a disjoint partition of $N$, the set of positive integers. In particular $a, b ; d, d^{\prime}$; $\delta, \epsilon$ are complementary pairs of functions.

Of the numerous relations satisfied by these functions we mention in particular the following:

$$
\begin{aligned}
b(n) & =a(n)+2 n, \quad d(n)=a(n)+n \\
a b(n) & =a(n)+b(n), \quad d^{\prime}(2 n)=b(n) \\
d(n) & =a\left(b(n)-d^{\prime}(n)\right), \quad a^{2} b(n)=2 b(n)=1, \\
\epsilon(2 n) & =\epsilon(2 n-1)+1=d(n), \quad d^{\prime}(b(n))=\delta(n), \\
a(n+1) & =e(n)+n+1, \quad b(n+1)=p(n)+n+3, \\
e(d(n)) & =n, \quad e(b(n))=a(n), \quad e(\delta(n))=d(n) \\
p(d(n)) & =\delta(n), \quad p(\delta(n))=d(\delta(n)) .
\end{aligned}
$$

The sets $A_{k}, B_{k}$ are described by the following formulas:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{A}_{1}=\mathrm{d}(\underset{\sim}{\mathrm{~N}})-1, \\
& \left.\mathrm{~A}_{2 \mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{d} \delta^{\mathrm{k}-1} \epsilon \underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}}\right) \quad(\mathrm{k}=1,2,3, \cdots) \text {, } \\
& A_{2 k+1}=\delta^{k} \epsilon(\underset{\sim}{N}) \quad(k=1,2,3, \cdots) \text {, } \\
& B_{2 k}=d \delta^{k-1} d(\underset{\sim}{N}) \quad(k=1,2,3, \cdots) \text {, } \\
& \mathrm{B}_{2 \mathrm{k}+1}=\delta^{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{~d}(\underset{\sim}{\mathrm{~N}}) \quad(\mathrm{k}=1,2,3, \cdots) .
\end{aligned}
$$

This summarizes the first half of the paper. In the remaining sections of the paper we discuss various other functional relations. For the most part these relations are motivated by the introduction of certain supplementary functions $f, f^{\prime} ; g, g^{\prime}$ now to be defined. To begin with, we note that the function

$$
s(n)=a b(n)-b a(n)
$$

takes on only the values 1,2 ; similarly the function

$$
\mathrm{t}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{ad}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})-\mathrm{d}^{\prime} \mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})
$$

takes on only the values 0,1 . We define $f, f^{\prime}$ by means of

$$
\mathrm{s}(\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}))=1, \quad \mathrm{~s}\left(\mathrm{f}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})\right)=2 ;
$$

similarly we define g , $\mathrm{g}^{\prime}$ by means of

$$
\mathrm{t}(\mathrm{~g}(\mathrm{n}))=0, \quad \mathrm{t}\left(\mathrm{~g}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})\right)=1
$$

Thus $f, f^{\prime} ; g$, $g^{\prime}$ are complementary pairs.
Alternatively we may define these functions by means of

$$
\mathrm{a}^{2}(\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n})) \equiv 1, \quad \mathrm{a}^{2}\left(\mathrm{f}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})\right) \equiv 0 \quad(\bmod 2)
$$

and

$$
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~g}(\mathrm{n})) \equiv 1, \quad \mathrm{a}\left(\mathrm{~g}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})\right) \equiv 0 \quad(\bmod 2)
$$

In addition, the complementary pair $c, c^{\prime}$ should also be mentioned:

$$
c(n)=b(n)-d^{\prime}(n) ;
$$

as noted above,

$$
d(n)=a(c(n))
$$

Of the relations satisfied by these functions we note the following:

$$
\left.\begin{array}{c}
g(n)=a(f(n)), \quad f^{\prime}(n)=d(f(n)) \\
b(f(n))-a\left(f^{\prime}(n)\right)=1 \\
c^{\prime}(n)= \begin{cases}d(n) & \left(n=f^{\prime}(k)\right) \\
d(n)-1 & (n=f(k))\end{cases} \\
c(n)= \begin{cases}d^{\prime}(n)+1 & (n=g(k)) \\
d^{\prime}(n) & \left(n=g^{\prime}(k)\right)\end{cases} \\
a\left(c^{\prime}(n)\right)=c^{\prime}(n)+n-1=d^{\prime}(2 n-1)
\end{array}\right\} \begin{gathered}
c(n)=\epsilon(a(n))+1 \\
e\left(c^{\prime}(n)+1\right)=n .
\end{gathered}
$$

The last section of the paper contains some theorems involving the functions of $\sigma, \tau$ defined as follows by means of (1.1):

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \sigma(\mathrm{N}) \equiv \epsilon_{1}+\epsilon_{2}+\epsilon_{3}+\cdots \quad(\bmod 2) \\
& \tau(\mathrm{N}) \equiv \mathrm{k} \quad(\bmod 2) \quad\left(\mathrm{N} \in \mathrm{~A}_{\mathrm{k}}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

In particular we show that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{b}(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}}) & =\{\mathrm{n} \mid \sigma(\mathrm{n})=0, \quad \tau(\mathrm{n})=1\} \\
\mathrm{g}(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}}) & =\{\mathrm{n} \mid \sigma(\mathrm{n})=\tau(\mathrm{n})\} \\
& =\{\mathrm{n} \mid \sigma(\mathrm{n}-1)=0\}, \\
\operatorname{dg}(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}}) & =\{\mathrm{n} \mid \mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{~d}), \quad \sigma(\mathrm{n})=1\} \\
\operatorname{dg}^{\prime}(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}}) & =\{\mathrm{n} \mid \mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{~d}), \quad \sigma(\mathrm{n})=0\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

For the convenience of the reader a summary of formulas appears at the end of the paper, as well as several numerical tables.

It should be remarked that most of the theorems in this paper were suggested by numerical data. Thus further numerical data may well suggest additional theorems, particularly in the case of some of the functions defined in the latter part of the paper and not explicitly mentioned in this Introduction.

## 2. THE CANONICAL REPRESENTATIONS

As above, the Pellian numbers $P_{n}$ are defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{0}=0, \quad P_{1}=1, \quad P_{n}=2 P_{n-1}+P_{n-2}, \tag{2.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

so that

$$
P_{2}=2, \quad P_{3}=5, \quad P_{4}=12, \quad P_{5}=29, \quad P_{6}=70, \quad \cdots
$$

We consider sequences

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\epsilon_{1}, \epsilon_{2}, \cdots, \epsilon_{\mathrm{n}}\right) \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

of length $n$, where the $\epsilon_{i}$ satisfy the conditions

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\epsilon_{1}=0 \text { or } 1 ; \quad \epsilon_{i}=0,1,2 \quad(i>1)  \tag{2.3}\\
\text { if } \epsilon_{i}=2 \text { then } \epsilon_{i-1}=0
\end{array}\right.
$$

It is easily seen by induction on $n$ that the number of sequences (2.2) is precisely $P_{n+1}$. We prove next that if $N$ is given by

$$
N=\epsilon_{1} P_{1}+\cdots+\epsilon_{n} P_{n}
$$

where the $\epsilon_{i}$ satisfy the conditions (2.3), then $N<P_{n+1}$. For otherwise we would have

$$
\begin{aligned}
N- & \epsilon_{n} P_{n}-\epsilon_{n-1} P_{n-1} \geq P_{n+1}-\epsilon_{n} P_{n}-\epsilon_{n-1} P_{n-1} \\
& =\left(2-\epsilon_{n}\right) P_{n}+\left(1-\epsilon_{n-1}\right) P_{n-1} \geq P_{n-1}
\end{aligned}
$$

which eventually leads to a contradiction. See Keller [7] for similar results.
Theorem 2.1. Every positive integer N can be written uniquely in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
N=\epsilon_{1} P_{1}+\epsilon_{2} P_{2}+\cdots, \tag{2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\epsilon_{1}=0 \text { or } 1 ; \quad \epsilon_{i}=0,1 \text { or } 2  \tag{2.5}\\
\text { if } \epsilon_{i}=2 \text { then } \epsilon_{i-1}=0
\end{array}\right.
$$

Proof. In view of the preceding remarks, it is enough to prove that no integer N can have more than one representation (2.4), because if this can be established, the $P_{n+1}$ numbers corresponding to the sequences (2.2) of length $n$ will be precisely

$$
0,1,2, \cdots, P_{n+1}-1
$$

Now suppose N is given by

$$
N=\epsilon_{1} P_{1}+\cdots+\epsilon_{n} P_{n}, \quad \epsilon_{\mathrm{n}} \neq 0
$$

where the $\epsilon_{i}$ satisfy (2.5). Then $P_{n} \leq N<P_{n+1}$, so that $n$ is uniquely determined by $N$. Now by considering $N-\epsilon_{n} P_{n}$ we see that $\epsilon_{n}$ itself is determined uniquely by N. Hence, by induction, the theorem is proved.

In a similar manner we can prove the following theorem.

Theorem 2.2. Every positive integer N can be written uniquely in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
N=\delta_{1} P_{1}+\delta_{2} P_{2}+\cdots, \tag{2.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\delta_{i}=0,1 \text { or } 2  \tag{2.7}\\
\text { if } \delta_{1}=\cdots=\delta_{i-1} \neq 0, \quad(i=1,2,3, \cdots) \\
\delta_{i} \neq 0, \text { then } i \text { is odd. }
\end{array}\right.
$$

The form (2.4) will be called the first canonical representation for $N$ (or simply the canonical representation); the form (2.6) will be called the second canonical representation. It will be convenient to abbreviate the formula

$$
N=\epsilon_{1} P_{1}+\epsilon_{2} P_{2}+\epsilon_{3} P_{3}+\cdots
$$

as follows:

$$
\mathrm{N}=\cdot \epsilon_{1} \epsilon_{2} \epsilon_{3} \cdots
$$

We shall say that $N$ is a missing number if $\epsilon_{i}=2$ for some i. Hence the missing numbers are those which are not the sum of distinct Pell numbers.

Theorem 2.3. The number of missing numbers less than $P_{n+1}$ is equal to $P_{n+1}-2^{n}$. Moreover if

$$
\mathrm{N}=\epsilon_{0}+2 \epsilon_{1}+\cdots+2^{\mathrm{k}} \epsilon_{\mathrm{k}} \quad\left(\epsilon_{\mathrm{i}}=0,1\right)
$$

is the binary representation of $N$, then

$$
R_{N}=\epsilon_{0} P_{1}+\epsilon_{1} P_{2}+\cdots+\epsilon_{k} P_{k+1}
$$

is the $N^{\text {th }}$ number that can be represented as a sum of distinct Pell numbers.
Proof. The number of sequences

$$
\left(\epsilon_{1}, \epsilon_{2}, \cdots, \epsilon_{\mathrm{n}}\right)
$$

in which each $\epsilon_{i}=0$ or 1 is clearly $2^{n}$. Since the total number of sequences is $P_{n+1}$, it follows that the number of sequences containing at least one 2 is $P_{n+1}-2^{n}$.

For the second half of the theorem it suffices to observe that the proof of Theorem 2.1 shows that $R_{N}$ is a strictly monotone function of $N$.

The first few missing numbers are

$$
\begin{equation*}
4,9,10,11,16,21,22,23,24,25,26,27,28, \cdots \tag{2.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let N have the first canonical representation

$$
N=\epsilon_{1} P_{1}+\epsilon_{2} P_{2}+\epsilon_{3} P_{3}+\cdots
$$

We define the functions $e(N), p(N)$ by means of

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{~N})=\epsilon_{2} \mathrm{P}_{1}+\epsilon_{3} \mathrm{P}_{2}+\epsilon_{4} \mathrm{P}_{3}+\cdots \tag{2.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{~N})=\epsilon_{1} P_{2}+\epsilon_{2} P_{3}+\epsilon_{3} P_{4}+\cdots \tag{2.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Theorem 2.4. The functions $e$ and $p$ satisfy the following identities:

$$
\begin{gather*}
p(n)=e(n)+2 n  \tag{2.11}\\
e(p(n))=n  \tag{2.12}\\
e(p(n)+1)=n  \tag{2.13}\\
e p(n)+2=n+1 \tag{2.14}
\end{gather*}
$$

Moreover e and pare monotone.

Proof. Let n be given canonically by

$$
\mathrm{n}=\cdot \epsilon_{1} \epsilon_{2} \epsilon_{3} \cdots
$$

Then by definition

$$
\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{n})=\cdot 0 \epsilon_{1} \epsilon_{2} \epsilon_{3} \cdots
$$

and

$$
\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{n})=\cdot \epsilon_{2} \epsilon_{3} \epsilon_{4} \cdots
$$

Hence (2.11), (2.12), (2.13) follow at once. If $\epsilon_{2}<2, p(n)+2$ is given canonically by

$$
\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{n})+2=\cdot 0\left(\epsilon_{1}+1\right) \epsilon_{2} \epsilon_{3} \cdots
$$

and (2.14) follows. Now suppose $\epsilon_{2}=2$. Then $\epsilon_{1}=0$ and

$$
\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{n})+2=\left(\epsilon_{3}+1\right) \mathrm{P}_{4}+\epsilon_{4} \mathrm{P}_{5}+\cdots
$$

As before this is canonical if $\epsilon_{4}<2$ and (2.14) follows. Otherwise we continue until, for some $\mathrm{k}, \epsilon_{2 \mathrm{k}}<2$, and again (2.14) follows.

To prove the monotonicity of $e$ and $p$, we again take the canonical representation

$$
\mathrm{n}=\cdot \epsilon_{1} \epsilon_{2} \epsilon_{3} \cdots
$$

if $\epsilon_{1}=1$, then

$$
\mathrm{n}-1=\cdot 0 \epsilon_{2} \epsilon_{3} \cdots,
$$

so that $e(n-1)=e(n)$. If $\epsilon_{1}=0$ and $\epsilon_{2} \neq 0$, then

$$
\mathrm{n}-1=\cdot 1\left(\epsilon_{2}-1\right) \epsilon_{3} \cdots
$$

and $e(n-1)=e(n)-1$. If
(2.15)

$$
\epsilon_{1}=\epsilon_{2}=\cdots=\epsilon_{\mathrm{k}-1}=0, \quad \epsilon_{\mathrm{k}} \neq 0
$$

then, for k odd,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{n}-1=e \mathrm{P}_{2}+2 \mathrm{P}_{4}+\cdots+2 \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{k}-1}+\left(\epsilon_{\mathrm{k}}-1\right) \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{k}}+\epsilon_{\mathrm{k}+1} \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{k}+1}+\cdots \tag{2.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{n}-1)=2 \mathrm{P}_{1}+2 \mathrm{P}_{3}+\cdots+2 \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{k}-2}+\left(\epsilon_{\mathrm{n}}-1\right) \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{k}-1}+\epsilon_{\mathrm{k}+1} \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{k}}+\cdots
$$

This gives $e(n-1)=e(n)$. If in (2.15) $k$ is even, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{n}-1=\mathrm{P}_{1}+2 \mathrm{P}_{3}+\cdots+2 \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{n}-1}+\left(\epsilon_{\mathrm{k}}-1\right) \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{k}}+\epsilon_{\mathrm{k}+1} \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{k}+1}+\cdots \tag{2.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
e(n-1)=2 P_{2}+\cdots+2 P_{k-2}+\left(\epsilon_{k}-1\right) P_{k-1}+\epsilon_{k+1} P_{k}+\cdots,
$$

which gives $e(n-1)=e(n)-1$.
This proves that e is monotone and therefore, by (2.12), p is also monotone. As a corollary we have the following theorem.
Theorem 2.5. For any $n$, the equation $e(x)=n$ has at most three solutions. Proof. Assume

$$
e\left(x_{1}\right)=e\left(x_{2}\right)=e\left(x_{3}\right)=e\left(x_{4}\right)
$$

with

$$
\mathrm{x}_{1}<\mathrm{x}_{2}<\mathrm{x}_{3}<\mathrm{x}_{4} .
$$

It follows from the definition of $p$ that any $n$ must be of at least one of the three forms $p(j)$, $p(j)+1$ or $p(j)+2$. Take $n=x_{2}$. Then by Theorem 2.4 we have

$$
e\left(x_{1}\right) \neq e\left(x_{4}\right)
$$

## 3. NEWMAN-SKOLEM PAIRS

By a Newman-Skolem pair we shall mean a pair of functions ( $a, b$ ) defined on the positive integers N and satisfying the conditions

$$
\begin{gather*}
a(\underset{\sim}{N}) \cup b(\underset{\sim}{N})=\mathbb{N},  \tag{3.1}\\
a(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}}) \cap b(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}}) \text { vacuous },  \tag{3.2}\\
a, b \text { strictly monotone. } \tag{3.3}
\end{gather*}
$$

Hence $a$ and $b$ are complementary functions. The Newman-Skolem pair ( $a, b$ ) defined uniquely by the condition

$$
\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})+\mathrm{n}
$$

was introduced in [5].
We shall say that $(a, b)$ is ordered if
(3.4)

$$
a(n)<b(n) \quad(n=1,2,3, \cdots)
$$

and that $(a, b)$ is separated if $(a, b)$ is ordered and

$$
\begin{equation*}
b(n+1)>b(n)+1 \quad(n=1,2,3, \cdots) . \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Define
(3.6)

$$
d(n)=b(n)-n .
$$

Theorem 3.1. If $(a, b)$ is separated then

$$
a d(n)=b(n)-1
$$

and
(3.8)

$$
a(d(n)+1)=b(n)+1
$$

Proof. By (3.5) we must have, for some $k$,

$$
b(n)-1=a(k), \quad b(n)+1=a(k+1)
$$

Hence the $\mathrm{k}+\mathrm{n}$ numbers

$$
a(1), a(2), \cdots, a(k) ; b(1), \cdots, b(n)
$$

comprise all the numbers less than or equal to $b(n)$, so that

$$
\mathrm{k}+\mathrm{n}=\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{n}), \quad \mathrm{k}=\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{n})-\mathrm{n}=\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n}) .
$$

This evidently completes the proof of the theorem.
Theorem 3.2. If $(a, b)$ is separated then
(3.9)

$$
a(n+1)=a(n)+2 \not n \in(d)
$$

where (d) denotes the range of the function $d$.
Proof. Since ( $a, b$ ) is separated it is clear that, for any $n$, either $a(n+1)=a(n)+1$ or $a(n+1)=a(n)+2$. Also we have

$$
d(n+1)=d(n)=b(n+1)-b(n)-1 \geq 1
$$

so that $d$ is strictly monotone.

Now assume

$$
\mathrm{n} \neq \mathrm{d}(\mathrm{k}) \quad(\mathrm{k}=1,2,3, \cdots)
$$

Then, for some $k$,

$$
\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{k})+1 \leq \mathrm{n}<\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{k}+1)
$$

If $a(n+1)=a(n)+2$ then $a(n)+1=b(j)$ for some ( $j$ ). But

$$
\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{k})+2=\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{k})+1)+1 \leq \mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})+1<\mathrm{ad}(\mathrm{k}+1)+1=\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{k}+1)
$$

so that $a(n)+1=b(j)$ is impossible.
Theorem 3.3. If ( $\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{b}$ ) is separated and

$$
d(n+1)>d(n)+1 \quad(n=1,2,3, \cdots)
$$

then

$$
a(d(\mathrm{k})-1)=\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{k})-2 \quad(\mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{k}) \geq 2)
$$

Proof. Since

$$
d(\mathrm{k})-1 \neq \mathrm{d}(\mathrm{j}) \quad(\mathrm{j}=1,2,3, \cdots)
$$

by Theorem 3.1,

$$
\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{k})-1=\mathrm{ad}(\mathrm{k})=\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{k})-1)+1
$$

Theorem 3.4. If ( $a, b$ ) is a Newman-Skolem pair and if, for all $n$, we have

$$
\mathrm{ba}(\mathrm{n})<\mathrm{ab}(\mathrm{n})<\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})+1)
$$

then

$$
\begin{equation*}
a b(n)=a(n)+b(n) \tag{3.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. Using the hypothesis we see that the $a(n)+b(n)$ numbers

$$
b(1), b(2), \cdots, b a(n) ; a(1), a(2), \cdots, a b(n)
$$

coincide with the numbers less than or equal to $a b(n)$. Hence (3.10) follows at once.
It is well known that if $\alpha, \beta$ are positive irrational numbers satisfying

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{\alpha}+\frac{1}{\beta}=1, \quad \alpha<\beta \tag{3.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

the pair $(\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{b})$ defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})=[\alpha \mathrm{n}], \quad \mathrm{b}(\mathrm{n})=[\beta \mathrm{n}] \tag{3.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a separated Newman-Skolem pair. For the remainder of this paper we define

$$
\begin{gathered}
a(n)=[\sqrt{2} n] \\
b(n)=a(n)+2 n=[(2+\sqrt{2}) n] \\
d(n)=b(n)-n=[(1+\sqrt{2}) n] \\
d^{\prime}(n)=\left[\frac{1}{2}(2+\sqrt{2}) n\right] .
\end{gathered}
$$

Thus ( $\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{b}$ ) and ( $\mathrm{d}^{\prime}, \mathrm{d}$ ) are separated Newman-Skolem pairs. Making use of the preceding theorems we get

Theorem 3.5. The functions $a, b, d, d^{\prime}$ as defined above, satisfy the following relations:

$$
\begin{gathered}
a d(n)=b(n)-1 \\
a(d(n)+1)=b(n)+1 \\
a(d(n)-1)=b(n)-2 \\
d^{\prime}(\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n}))=\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n})-1 \\
\mathrm{~d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})+1)=\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n})+1 \\
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n}+1)=\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})+2 \rightleftarrows \mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{~d}) \\
\mathrm{d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n}+1)=\mathrm{d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})+2 \rightleftarrows \mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{a})
\end{gathered}
$$

Here we have let (f) denote the range of the function f .
Theorem 3.6. For all positive integers $n$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
a b(n)=a(n)+b(n) . \tag{3.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. Since

$$
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})<\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}<\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})+1,
$$

we see that

$$
2 \mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})+\sqrt{2} \mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})<\sqrt{2}(2 \mathrm{n}+\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})) \leq 2(\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})+1)+\sqrt{2}(\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})+1) .
$$

Hence, taking greatest integers,

$$
b(a(n)) \leq a b(n) \leq b(a(n)+1)
$$

Equality is obviously impossible. Hence, by Theorem 3.4, we get (3.13).
Suppose ( $\mathrm{d}^{\prime}, \mathrm{d}$ ) is any separated Newman-Skolem pair and suppose f is any increasing function. Let $d^{\prime} f=b$ and let $a$ be such that ( $\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{b}$ ) is a Newman-Skolem pair. Then since $d^{\prime}(\underset{\sim}{N}) \quad b(\underset{\sim}{N})$, it follows that $d(\underset{\sim}{N}) \quad a(\underset{\sim}{N})$. Hence there exists an increasing function c such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
d(n)=a c(n) . \tag{3.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now, since ( $\mathrm{d}^{\prime}, \mathrm{d}$ ) is separated, we have

$$
d^{\prime}(d(n)-n)=d(n)-1
$$

Hence, among the numbers

$$
1,2,3, \cdots, d(n)
$$

there are exactly $j$ members of $b(\mathbb{N})$, namely

$$
d^{\prime} f(1), \quad d^{\prime} f(2), \quad \cdots, \quad d^{\prime} f(j),
$$

where j is the largest integer such that

$$
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{j}) \leq \mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n})-\mathrm{n}
$$

We may write (symbolically)

$$
\begin{equation*}
j=\left[\frac{d(n)-n}{f}\right] \tag{3.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

The remaining $d(n)-j$ members in

$$
\{1,2,3, \cdots, \mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{n})\}
$$

are members of $a(N)$, so that

$$
\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{n})-\mathrm{j})
$$

that is
(3.16)

$$
c(n)=d(n)-\left[\frac{d(n)-n}{f}\right]
$$

Theorem 3.7. For the functions a, b, c, d' previously defined, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
d(n)=a\left(b(n)-d^{\prime}(n)\right) \tag{3.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. Since $d^{\prime}(2 n)=b(n)$, the above remarks apply with $f(n)=2 n$. Hence

$$
\mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n})-\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n})-\mathrm{n}}{2}\right]=\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{n})-\mathrm{n}-\left[\frac{\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})}{2}\right]
$$

But

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{n}+\left[\frac{\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})}{2}\right] & =\mathrm{n}+\left[\frac{1}{2}[2 \mathrm{n}]\right]=\mathrm{n}+\left[\frac{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}}{2}\right] \\
& =\left[\frac{1}{2}(2+\sqrt{2}) \mathrm{n}\right]=\mathrm{d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})
\end{aligned}
$$

so that

$$
c(n)=b(n)-d^{\prime}(n)
$$

This evidently completes the proof of the theorem.
4. RELATIONS BETWEEN $a, b, d$, $d$ ' AND e AND $p$

Theorem 4.1. The functions $a, b, c$ and $p$ are related by the following formulas:
(4.2)

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n}+1)=\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{n})+\mathrm{n}+1  \tag{4.1}\\
& \mathrm{~b}(\mathrm{n}+1)=\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{n})+\mathrm{n}+3 .
\end{align*}
$$

These formulas imply

| $(4.3)$ | $\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{n})=[(\sqrt{2}-1)(\mathrm{n}+1)]$, | $\mathrm{e}(0)=0$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $(4.4)$ | $\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{n})=[\sqrt{2}(\mathrm{n}+1)]+\mathrm{n}-1$, | $\mathrm{p}(0)=0$. |

Proof. It is clear by induction that ( $\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{b}$ ) is the unique Newman-Skolem pair satisfying
(4.5)

$$
b(n)=a(n)+2 n \quad(n=1,2,3, \cdots)
$$

Now let

$$
a^{\prime}(n+1)=e(n)+n+1
$$

and

$$
\mathrm{b}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n}+1)=\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{n})+\mathrm{n}+3
$$

We shall show that $\left(a^{\prime}, b^{\prime}\right)$ is a Newman-Skolem pair satisfying

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{b}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{a}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})+2 \mathrm{n} \tag{4.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

This will evidently prove the theorem.
By (2.11) we have

$$
p(n)=e(n)+2 n
$$

Hence

$$
\mathrm{b}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n}+1)-\mathrm{a}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n}+1)=\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{n})-\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{n})+2=2 \mathrm{n}+2
$$

so that (4.6) is satisfied.
Since, by Theorem (2.4),

$$
e(p(n))=e(p(n)+1)=n, \quad e(p(n)+2)=n+1
$$

we get

$$
a^{\prime}(p(n)+2)=p(n)+n+2=b^{\prime}(n+1)-1
$$

and

$$
\mathrm{a}^{\prime}(\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{n})+3)=\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{n})+\mathrm{n}+4=\mathrm{b}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n}+1)+1
$$

Hence the ranges of $a^{\prime}$ and $b^{\prime}$ are disjoint. Furthermore we see that

```
a'(1), a'(2), \cdots., a'(p(n))+2; b
```

are $\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{n})+\mathrm{n}+3$ distinct numbers less than or equal to

$$
\mathrm{b}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n}+1)=\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{n})+\mathrm{n}+3
$$

Hence all numbers in this range must be included and the theorem is proved.
Theorem 4.2. We have, for all $n$,

$$
\begin{align*}
& e(b(n))=a(n),  \tag{4.7}\\
& e(d(n))=n \tag{4.8}
\end{align*}
$$

Proof. By Theorems 3.5 and 4.1 we have

$$
b(n)+1=a(d(n)+1)=d(n)+1+e(d(n))
$$

Hence, since $b(n)-d(n)=n$, we get (4.8).
Since $d(n)=[(1+\sqrt{2}) n]$, it follows that

$$
\mathrm{d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})=\left[\frac{1}{2}(2+\sqrt{2}) \mathrm{n}\right] .
$$

Hence

$$
d^{\prime}(2 n)=b(n)
$$

In particular

$$
\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{n}) \notin \mathrm{d}(\underset{\sim}{\mathrm{~N}})
$$

so that, by Theorem 3.2,

$$
a(b(n)+1)=a b(n)+1
$$

Then

$$
b(n)+1+e(b(n))=a(n)+b(n)+1
$$

and therefore

$$
e(b(n))=a(n)
$$

This completes the proof of the theorem.
Further relations between $a, b, d, d^{\prime}$, $e$ and $p$ will be established in the next section.

$$
\text { 5. THE SETS } A_{k} \text { AND } B_{k}
$$

We define the sets $A_{k}$ and $B_{k}$ as follows:

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{k}=\left\{N \mid \epsilon_{1}=\cdots=\epsilon_{\mathrm{k}-1}=0, \quad \epsilon_{\mathrm{k}} \neq 0\right\} \tag{5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

(5.2)

$$
\mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{k}}=\left\{\mathrm{N} \mid \epsilon_{1}=\cdots=\epsilon_{\mathrm{k}-1}=0, \quad \epsilon_{\mathrm{k}}=2\right\}
$$

where
(5.3)

$$
N=\cdot \epsilon_{1} \epsilon_{2} \epsilon_{3} \cdots
$$

is the canonical representation of N .
We also define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{n})+\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n})=2 \mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})+3 \mathrm{n} \tag{5.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

and define $\epsilon(\mathrm{n})$ by the requirement

$$
\begin{equation*}
(\epsilon, \delta) \text { is a Newman-Skolem pair. } \tag{5.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Theorem 5.1. Let the non-negative integer $n$ have the canonical representation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{n}=\cdot \epsilon_{1} \epsilon_{2} \epsilon_{3} \cdots \tag{5.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n}+1)-1=\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{n})+1=\cdot 1 \epsilon_{1} \epsilon_{2} \epsilon_{3} \cdots \tag{5.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Hence

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{A}_{1}=\mathrm{d}(\underset{\sim}{\mathrm{~N}})-1 . \tag{5.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. The theorem follows from the relations

$$
b(n+1)=d(n+1)+n+1=p(n)+n+3 .
$$

Since it is clear that $(\epsilon, \delta)$ is a separated Newman-Skolem pair, it follows from Theorem 3.1 that

$$
\begin{gather*}
\epsilon(2 \mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{n}))=\delta(\mathrm{n})-1  \tag{5.9}\\
\epsilon(2 \mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{n})+1)=\delta(\mathrm{n})+1
\end{gather*}
$$

Since $\delta(n)-n=2 d(n)$, it follows from Theorem 3.3 that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\epsilon(2 d(n)-1)=\delta(n)-2 . \tag{5.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Moreover we have

$$
d^{2}(n)=d(n)+a d(n)=d(n) \neq b(n)-1=\delta(n)-1
$$

so that
(5.12)

$$
e(\delta(n)-1)=d(n)
$$

Also we have

$$
3+d+p d=b(d+1)=2(d+1)+a(d+1)=2 d+2+b+1
$$

so that

> (5.13)

$$
\begin{gathered}
\operatorname{pd}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n})+\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{n})=\delta(\mathrm{n}) . \\
\mathrm{e} \delta(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n}) .
\end{gathered}
$$

Applying e, we get (5.14)

Now using (4.1) and (4.2) we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{p} \delta & =\mathrm{d}(\delta+1)-2=(\delta+1)+\mathrm{a}(\delta+1)-2 \\
& =(\delta+1)+(\delta+1+\mathrm{e})-2=\mathrm{d}+2 \delta \\
& =\delta+\delta+\mathrm{e}(\delta-1)=\delta+\mathrm{a} \delta=\mathrm{d} \delta,
\end{aligned}
$$

so that
(5.15)

$$
\mathrm{p} \delta=\mathrm{d} \delta
$$

Theorem 5.2. We have
(5.16)

$$
\begin{gather*}
\mathrm{B}_{2}=\mathrm{d}^{2}(\mathbb{N}) \\
\mathrm{B}_{2 \mathrm{k}+1}=\delta^{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{~d}(\mathbb{N})  \tag{5.17}\\
\mathrm{B}_{2 \mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{d} \delta^{\mathrm{k}-1} \mathrm{~d}(\mathbb{N}) \quad(\mathrm{k}=1,2,3, \cdots) \\
(\mathrm{k}=2,3,4, \cdots)
\end{gather*}
$$

Proof. It is only necessary to prove (5.16) since (5.17) will then follow by (5.13) and (5.15).

Applying Theorem 5.1 to $d(n+1)-1$ we obtain

$$
\mathrm{d}^{2}(\mathrm{n}+1)-1=\cdot 11 \epsilon_{1} \epsilon_{2} \epsilon_{3} \cdots,
$$

so that

$$
\mathrm{d}^{2}(\mathrm{n}+1)=\cdot 02 \epsilon_{1} \epsilon_{2} \epsilon_{3} \cdots
$$

This evidently proves (5.16) and therefore the proof of Theorem 5.2 is complete.
Note that if n has the canonical representation

$$
\mathrm{n}=\cdot \epsilon_{1} \epsilon_{2} \epsilon_{3} \cdots,
$$

then
(5.19)

$$
\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n}+1)-1=; 1 \epsilon_{1} \epsilon_{2} \epsilon_{3} \cdots
$$

is also canonical. Since $\delta(n)=2 d(n)+n$, it follows that
(5.20)

$$
\delta(\mathrm{n}+1)-1=\cdot 02 \epsilon_{1} \epsilon_{2} \epsilon_{3} \cdots
$$

and
(5.21)

$$
\mathrm{d}(\delta(\mathrm{n}+1))-1=\cdot 102 \epsilon_{1} \epsilon_{2} \cdots
$$

are both canonical.
Theorem 5.3. We have

$$
\begin{gather*}
A_{1}=d(\underset{\sim}{N})-1  \tag{5.22}\\
A_{2 k}=d \delta^{k-1} \epsilon(\underset{\sim}{N})  \tag{5.23}\\
A_{2 k+1}=\delta^{k} \epsilon(\underset{\sim}{N})
\end{gather*}\left(\begin{array}{l}
k=1,2,3, \cdots)  \tag{5.24}\\
(k=1,2,3, \cdots) .
\end{array}\right.
$$

Proof. We have already proved (5.22). It will therefore suffice to establish

$$
\mathrm{A}_{2}=\mathrm{d} \epsilon(\mathbb{N})
$$

Now $\mathrm{A}_{2}$ consists of all N in the canonical form

$$
\mathrm{N}=\cdot 0 \epsilon_{2} \epsilon_{3} \epsilon_{4} \cdots \quad\left(\epsilon_{2} \neq 0\right) .
$$

Hence $A_{2}-1$ consists of all $N$ in the canonical form

$$
N=\cdot 1\left(\epsilon_{2}-1\right) \epsilon_{3} \epsilon_{4} \cdots \quad\left(\epsilon_{3} \neq 2\right) .
$$

Furthermore $d(\underset{\sim}{N})-1$ consists of all $N$ in the canonical form

$$
N=\cdot 1 f_{2} f_{3} f_{4} \ldots
$$

and by (5.21), d $\delta(\mathrm{N})-1$ consists of all N in the canonical form

$$
\mathrm{N}=\cdot 102 \mathrm{~g}_{4} \mathrm{~g}_{5} \ldots
$$

Therefore since $d(\mathbb{N})-1$ is the disjoint union of $d \delta(N)-1$ and $d \epsilon(N)-1$, we see that

$$
\mathrm{d} \epsilon(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}})-1=\mathrm{A}_{2}-1,
$$

that is,

$$
A_{2}=d \epsilon(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}}) .
$$

This completes the proof of the Theorem.
Theorem 5.4. We have

$$
\begin{gather*}
\mathrm{d}(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}})=\bigcup_{1}^{\infty} \mathrm{A}_{2 \mathrm{k}}  \tag{5.26}\\
(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}})=\cup_{1}^{\infty} \mathrm{A}_{2 \mathrm{k}+1}  \tag{5.27}\\
(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}})=\mathrm{d}(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}}) \cup(\mathrm{d}(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}})-1) . \tag{5.28}
\end{gather*}
$$

Proof. Since every integer is of the form $\delta^{k} \epsilon(\mathrm{n})$ for some $\mathrm{k} \geq 0$, (5,26) and (5.27) follow from the previous theorem. Since $\epsilon(\underset{\sim}{N})$ is the complement of $\delta(\underset{\sim}{N})$, (5.28) follows from (5.22) and (5.26).

We have seen above that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\epsilon(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}})=\mathrm{d}(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}}) \cup(\mathrm{d}(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}})-1) . \tag{5.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

Hence the numbers in $\epsilon(\underset{\sim}{N})$ are, in order,

```
d(1) - 1, d(1), d(2) - 1, d(2), d(3) - 1, d(3), \cdots..
```

It follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\epsilon(2 \mathrm{n})=\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n}), \quad \epsilon(2 \mathrm{n}-1)=\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n})-1 \tag{5.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

Applying e, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
e(\epsilon(\mathrm{n}))=[\mathrm{n} / 2] \tag{5.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

The following remark concerning the second canonical form is useful. If

$$
\mathrm{n}=\cdot \mathrm{f}_{1} \mathrm{f}_{2} \mathrm{f}_{3} \cdots \quad \text { (second canonical) }
$$

then

$$
\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n})=.0 \mathrm{f}_{1} \mathrm{f}_{2} \mathrm{f}_{3} \ldots \quad \text { (first canonical) }
$$

and

$$
\delta(\mathrm{n})=\cdot 00 \mathrm{f}_{1} \mathrm{f}_{2} \mathrm{f}_{3} \cdots \quad \text { (first and second canonical) } .
$$

6. ADDITIONAL RELATIONS INVOLVING a AND b

Theorem 6.1. We have
(6.1)

$$
a^{2} b=2 b-1
$$

For the proof we require
Theorem 6.2. The integer $n$ is in (d) if and only if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\{\frac{\mathrm{n}}{1+\sqrt{2}}\right\}>2-\sqrt{2}, \tag{6.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where ( $\alpha$ ) denotes the fractional part of the real number $\alpha$.
Proof. Let

$$
\mathrm{n}=\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{k})=[(1+\sqrt{2}) \mathrm{k}],
$$

so that

$$
(1+\sqrt{2}) \mathrm{k}-1<\mathrm{n}<(1+\sqrt{2}) \mathrm{k}, \quad \mathrm{k}-\frac{1}{1+\sqrt{2}}<\frac{\mathrm{n}}{1+\sqrt{2}}<\mathrm{k}
$$

This is equivalent to

$$
\left\{\frac{\mathrm{n}}{1+\sqrt{2}}\right\}>1-\frac{1}{1+\sqrt{2}}=1-(\sqrt{2}-1)=2-\sqrt{2} .
$$

Proof of Theorem 6.1. It follows from

$$
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})=[\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}]
$$

that
(6.3)
$\mathrm{n}-2 \leq \mathrm{a}^{2}(\mathrm{n}) \leq \mathrm{n}-1$.

It therefore suffices to show that
(6.4)

$$
a^{2} b(n) \equiv 1 \quad(\bmod 2) \quad(n=1,2,3, \cdots)
$$

Assume that there exists an integer $k$ such that

$$
a^{2} b(k) \equiv 0 \quad(\bmod 2)
$$

that is

$$
\mathrm{a}(2 \mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{k})) \equiv 0 \quad(\bmod 2)
$$

Then

$$
[2 \sqrt{2} d(\mathrm{k})]=2 \mathrm{j}
$$

for some integer j. Hence

$$
\left.\begin{array}{rl}
2 \mathrm{j} & <2 \sqrt{2} \mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{k})
\end{array}\right)<2 \mathrm{j}+1,
$$

so that
(6.5)

$$
\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{k})\}<\frac{1}{2}
$$

By Theorem 6.2,

$$
\left\{\frac{\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{k})}{1+\sqrt{2}}\right\}>2-\sqrt{2}
$$

that is

$$
\{(\sqrt{2}-1) \mathrm{d}(\mathrm{k})\}>2-\sqrt{2} .
$$

Hence

$$
\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{k})\}>2-\sqrt{2} .
$$

This contradicts (6.5) and so completes the proof of the theorem.
It follows from $a b=a+b$ that

$$
\begin{gathered}
b^{2}=a b+2 b=a+3 b \\
b^{3}=a b+3 b^{2} \\
=a+b+3(a+3 b) \\
=4 a+10 b \\
b^{4}=4(a+b)+10(a+3 b) \\
=14 a+34 b
\end{gathered}
$$

Put
(6.6)

$$
b^{k}=u_{k} a+v_{k} b, \quad u_{1}=0, \quad v_{1}=1, \quad u_{2}=1, \quad v_{2}=3
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
b^{k+1} & =u_{k}(a+b)+v_{k}(a+3 b) \\
& =\left(u_{k}+v_{k}\right) a+\left(u_{k}+3 v_{k}\right) b
\end{aligned}
$$

so that
(6.7)

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
u_{k+1}=u_{k}+v_{k} \\
v_{k+1}=u_{k}+3 v_{k}
\end{array}\right.
$$

It follows that

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
u_{k+2}-4 u_{k+1}+2 u_{k}=0 \\
v_{k+2}-4 v_{k+1}+2 v_{k}=0
\end{array}\right.
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
U(x)=\sum_{1}^{\infty} u_{k} x^{k} & =x^{2}+\sum_{3}^{\infty}\left(4 u_{k-1}-2 u_{k-2}\right) x^{k} \\
& =x^{2}+\left(4 x-2 x^{2}\right) U(x)
\end{aligned}
$$

so that

$$
\mathrm{U}(\mathrm{x})=\frac{\mathrm{x}^{2}}{1-4 \mathrm{x}+\mathrm{x}^{2}}
$$

We find that

$$
\begin{equation*}
u_{k}=\frac{\alpha^{k-1}-\beta^{k-1}}{\alpha-\beta}, \quad v_{k}=u_{k+1}-u_{k} \tag{6.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\alpha=2+\sqrt{2}, \quad \beta=‘ 2-\sqrt{2} .
$$

Theorem 6.3. The function. $\mathrm{b}^{\mathrm{k}}$ is evaluated by means of (6.6) and (6.8), In the next place,

$$
\begin{gathered}
a b=a+b, \\
(a b)^{2}=a^{2} b+b a b \\
=2 a^{2} b+2 a b \\
=2(2 b-1)+2(a+b) \\
=2 a+6 b-2, \\
(a b)^{3}=2 a^{2} b+6 b a b-2 \\
=8 a^{2} b+12 a b-2 \\
=8(2 b-1)+12(a+b)-2 \\
=12 a+28 b-10, \\
(a b)^{4}=56 a+136 b-50
\end{gathered}
$$

Put

$$
\begin{equation*}
(a b)^{k}=u_{k} a+v_{k} b-t_{k} \tag{6.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
u_{1}=v_{1}=1, \quad t_{1}=0, \quad u_{2}=2, \quad v_{2}=6, \quad t_{2}=2
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
(a b)^{k+1} & =u_{k} a^{2} b+v_{k} b a b-t_{k} \\
& =\left(u_{k}+v_{k}\right) a^{2} b+2 v_{k} a b-t_{k}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =\left(u_{k}+v_{k}\right)(2 b-1)+2 v_{k}(a+b)-t_{k} \\
& =2 v_{k} a+\left(2 u_{k}+4 v_{k}\right) b-\left(u_{k}+v_{k}+t_{k}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

so that

$$
\begin{gathered}
u_{k+1}=2 v_{k} \\
v_{k+1}=2 u_{k}+4 v_{k}=4 v_{k}+4 v_{k-1} \\
t_{k+1}=u_{k}+v_{k}+t_{k}
\end{gathered}
$$

Let

$$
Q_{0}=Q_{1}=1, \quad Q_{2}=3, \quad Q_{3}=7, \quad Q_{k+1}=2 Q_{k}+Q_{k-1}
$$

It is easily verified that

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q_{k}=P_{k-1}+P_{k} \tag{6.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

| k | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{k}}$ | 0 | 1 | 2 | 5 | 12 | 29 | 70 |
| $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{k}}$ | 1 | 1 | 3 | 7 | 17 | 41 | 99 |

We find that

$$
\begin{gather*}
u_{k}=2^{k-1} Q_{k-1}, \quad v_{k}=2^{k-1} Q_{k}  \tag{6.11}\\
t_{k}=\frac{1}{7}\left(2^{k+1} P_{k+1}-3 \cdot 2^{k} P_{k}-2\right) . \tag{6.12}
\end{gather*}
$$

Theorem 6.4. The function $(\mathrm{ab})^{\mathrm{k}}$ is evaluated by means of (6.9), (6.10), (6.11) and (6.12).
7. THE FUNCTIONS $f, f^{\prime}, g, g^{\prime}, c, c^{\prime}$

It follows from

$$
a(n)=[\sqrt{2} n], \quad b(n)=[(2+\sqrt{2}) n]
$$

that
(7.1)

$$
a b(n)-b a(n)=1 \text { or } 2 \quad(n=1,2,3, \cdots)
$$

We may accordingly define the pair of complementary functions $f$, $f^{\prime}$ by means of

$$
a b(n)-b a(n)= \begin{cases}1 & \left(\begin{array}{ll}
n & \in(f) \\
2 & \left(n \in\left(f^{\prime}\right)\right) \tag{7.2}
\end{array} .\right.\end{cases}
$$

An equivalent definition is
(7.3)

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{lll}
a^{2} f(n) & \equiv 1 & (\bmod 2) \\
a^{2} f^{\prime}(n) & \equiv 0 & (\bmod 2)
\end{array} .\right.
$$

It is also easily verified that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{ad}^{\prime}(n)-d^{\prime} a(n)=0 \text { or } 1 \quad(n=1,2,3, \cdots) . \tag{7.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Hence we may define the pair $g$, $g^{\prime}$ by means of

$$
\operatorname{ad}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})-d^{\prime} a(\mathrm{n})=\left\{\begin{array}{ll}
0 & (\mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{~g})  \tag{7.5}\\
1 & \left(\mathrm{n} \in\left(\mathrm{~g}^{\prime}\right)\right.
\end{array}\right) .
$$

It is somewhat more convenient to take as definition

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{ll}
\operatorname{ag}(n) & \equiv 1  \tag{7.6}\\
\operatorname{ag}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n}) & (\bmod 2) \\
0 & (\bmod 2)
\end{array} .\right.
$$

We shall show that (7.5) and (7.6) are equivalent.
For brevity put
(7.7)
$s=a b-b a$,
t $=\mathrm{ad}^{\prime}-\mathrm{d}^{\prime} \mathrm{a}$.

It is easily verified that

$$
\begin{equation*}
s(n)=2 n-a^{2}(n) \tag{7.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

from which the equivalence of (7.2) and (7.3) is immediate.
It is also immediate from (7.3) and (7.6) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{g}=\mathrm{af} . \tag{7.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the next place

$$
\begin{align*}
& t=\mathrm{ad}^{\prime}-\mathrm{d}^{\prime} \mathrm{a}=\mathrm{ad} \mathrm{~d}^{\prime}-\mathrm{a}-\mathrm{n}+1, \\
& \mathrm{ta}=\mathrm{ad}^{\prime} \mathrm{a}-\mathrm{a}^{2}-\mathrm{a}+1 \\
& =\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~d}-1)-\mathrm{a}^{2}-\mathrm{a}+1 \\
& =\mathrm{b}-\mathrm{a}^{2}-\mathrm{a}-1 \\
& \mathrm{ta}(\mathrm{n})=2 \mathrm{n}-\mathrm{a}^{2}-1, \\
& \left\{\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{taf} & \equiv \mathrm{a}^{2} \mathrm{f}+1 \equiv 0(\bmod 2), \\
\operatorname{taf} f^{\prime} & \equiv \mathrm{a}^{2} \mathrm{f}^{\prime}+1 \equiv 1 \quad(\bmod 2)
\end{aligned}\right. \tag{7.10}
\end{align*}
$$

Also

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathrm{tb} & =\mathrm{ad} d^{\prime} b-d b+1 \\
& =a \delta-a b-b+1 \\
& =d+\delta-a-2 b+1 \\
& =b+2 d-a-2 b+1 \\
& \equiv 1(\bmod 2) \tag{7.11}
\end{align*}
$$

It follows from (7.10) and (7.11) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{t}(\mathrm{n}) \equiv 0 \quad(\bmod 2) \nLeftarrow \mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{~g}) . \tag{7.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

This evidently establishes the equivalence of (7.5) and (7.6).

Note that the pair g, $g^{\prime}$ is not separated.
Theorem 7.1. We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{df}=\mathrm{f}^{\mathrm{r}} \tag{7.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

The proof of this theorem requires a number of preliminary results.
Theorem 7.2
(7.14)

Proof.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{bf}-\mathrm{dg}-1 & =\mathrm{af}+2 \mathrm{f}-\mathrm{ag}-\mathrm{g}-1 \\
& =2 \mathrm{f}-\mathrm{a}^{2} \mathrm{f}-1=0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Theorem 7.3

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{f}) \rightleftarrows\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}\}<\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \tag{7.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. By (7.2) or (7.3)

$$
\mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{f}) \not \rightleftarrows \mathrm{a}^{2} \mathrm{n}=2 \mathrm{n}-1
$$

Consider
$[\sqrt{2}[\sqrt{2} n]]=2 n-1, \quad 2 n-1<\sqrt{2}[\sqrt{2} n]<2 n$.
Put $\mathrm{k}=[\sqrt{2}, \mathrm{n}]$, so that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}-1<\sqrt{2} \mathrm{k}<2 \mathrm{n} \\
& \sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}<\mathrm{k}<\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n} \\
& 0<\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}-\mathrm{k}<\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

that is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}\}<\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} . \tag{7.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Hence if $\mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{f})$, Eq. (7.6) is satisfied.
Next let $\mathrm{n} \in\left(\mathrm{f}^{\mathrm{r}}\right)$, so that $\mathrm{a}^{2}(\mathrm{n})=2 \mathrm{n}-2$. Consider

$$
\begin{gathered}
{[\sqrt{2}[\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}]]=2 \mathrm{n}-2} \\
2 \mathrm{n}-2<\sqrt{2}[\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}]<2 \mathrm{n}-1 \\
2 \mathrm{n}-2<\sqrt{2} \mathrm{k}<2 \mathrm{n}-1 \quad(\mathrm{k}=[\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}]) \\
\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}-\sqrt{2}<\mathrm{k}<\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\
\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}<\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}-\mathrm{k}<\sqrt{2}
\end{gathered}
$$

that is

$$
\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}\}>\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}
$$

Hence if $n \in\left(\mathrm{f}^{\prime}\right)$, Eq. (7.17) is satisfied.
Combining (7.16) and (7.17), we get (7.15).
Proof of Theorem 7.1. By Theorem 6.2, $n \in(d)$ if and only if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\{\frac{\mathrm{n}}{1+\sqrt{2}}\right\}>2-\sqrt{2} \tag{7.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

Put

$$
(1+\sqrt{2}) \mathbf{f}=\mathrm{df}+\epsilon ;
$$

by Theorem 7.3, we have $\epsilon<1 / \sqrt{2}$. Moreover

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{f} & =\frac{\mathrm{df}}{1+\sqrt{2}}+\frac{\epsilon}{1+\sqrt{2}} \\
& =\mathrm{J}+\left\{\frac{\mathrm{df}}{1+\sqrt{2}}\right\}+\frac{\epsilon}{1+\sqrt{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
J=\left[\frac{\mathrm{df}}{1+\sqrt{2}}\right]
$$

Then

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left\{\frac{\mathrm{df}}{1+\sqrt{2}}\right\}+\frac{\epsilon}{1+\sqrt{2}}=1, \\
\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{df}\}+\epsilon(\sqrt{2}-1)=1, \\
\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{df}\}>1-\frac{\sqrt{2}-1}{\sqrt{2}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}},
\end{gathered}
$$

so that
(7.19) (df) $\subset\left(\mathrm{f}^{\prime}\right)$.
We shall now show that (7.20) ( $\left.\mathrm{f}^{\prime}\right) \subset(\mathrm{df})$.

Let n satisfy $\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}\}>1 / \sqrt{2}$, so that $\mathrm{n} \in\left(\mathrm{f}^{\prime}\right)$. Then, by (7.18), $\mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{d})$, that is $\mathrm{n}=\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{k})=[(1+\sqrt{2}) \mathrm{k}]$,
for some integer k. Thus

$$
\begin{gathered}
(1+\sqrt{2}) \mathrm{k}=\mathrm{n}+\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{k}\} \\
(1+\sqrt{2}) \mathrm{k}+(\sqrt{2}-1) \mathrm{n}=\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}+\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{k}\}
\end{gathered}
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
(1+\sqrt{2}) \mathrm{k}+(\sqrt{2}-1) \mathrm{d}(\mathrm{k})=\mathrm{ad}(\mathrm{k})+\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}\}+\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{k}\}>\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{k})-1+\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}+\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{k}\} \\
\sqrt{2} \mathrm{k}-(2-\sqrt{2}) \mathrm{d}(\mathrm{k})+1>\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}+\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{k}\} \\
\sqrt{2} \mathrm{k}-(2-\sqrt{2})((1+\sqrt{2}) \mathrm{k}-\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{k}\})+1>\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}+\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{k}\} \\
(2-\sqrt{2})\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{k}\}+1>\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}+\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{k}\} \\
\frac{\sqrt{2}-1}{\sqrt{2}}>(\sqrt{2}-1)\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{k}\} \\
\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}>\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{k}\}
\end{gathered}
$$

Therefore $k \in(f), n \in(d f)$.
This proves (7.20) and so completes the proof of the theorem.
Theorem 7.4. We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
b f-a f^{\prime}=1 \tag{7.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. By (7.14), Eq. (7.21) may be replaced by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{af}^{\prime}=\mathrm{dg}=\mathrm{daf}, \tag{7.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

which by Theorem 7.1 is the same as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{adf}=\operatorname{daf} \tag{7.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now

$$
\begin{aligned}
a d-d a & =b-1-a^{2}-a \\
& =2 n-1-a^{2} \\
\text { adf }-\operatorname{daf} & =2 f-1-a^{2} f=0
\end{aligned}
$$

This proves (7.23) and therefore proves (7.21).
Theorem 7.5. The pair ( $f, \mathrm{f}^{\prime}$ ) is separated.
Proof. By (7.13)

$$
\mathrm{f}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{df}(\mathrm{n})>\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}),
$$

so that the pair ( $f, \mathrm{f}^{\prime}$ ) is ordered. Since the pair ( $\mathrm{d}^{\prime}, \mathrm{d}$ ) is separated, it follows that

$$
f^{\prime}(n+1)-f^{\prime}(n)=d f(n+1)-d f(n)>1
$$

Define

$$
\begin{equation*}
c(n)=b(n)-d^{\prime}(n) \tag{7.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

so that by (3.17)

$$
\mathrm{d}=\mathrm{ac}
$$

Theorem 7.6. We have
(7.26)

$$
f^{\prime}=\operatorname{acf}=\operatorname{caf}
$$

Proof. It suffices to show that
(7.27)

$$
\text { acf }-\mathrm{caf}=0
$$

Now

$$
\begin{aligned}
a c-c a & =d-b a+d^{\prime} a \\
& =d-a^{2}-2 a+d-1 \\
a c f-c a f= & 2 d f-2 a f-a^{2} f-1 \\
& =2 f-a^{2} f-1=0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Theorem 7.7
(7.28)

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{~g}) \nRightarrow\left\{\frac{\mathrm{n}}{\sqrt{2}}\right\}<\frac{1}{2} \\
\mathrm{n} \in\left(\mathrm{~g}^{\prime}\right) \nRightarrow\left\{\frac{\mathrm{n}}{\sqrt{2}}\right\}<\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right.
$$

Proof. Let $n \in(g)$, so that $a(n) \equiv 1(\bmod 2)$. Then

$$
\begin{gathered}
{[\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}]=2 \mathrm{k}-1} \\
2 \mathrm{k}-1<\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}<2 \mathrm{k} \\
\mathrm{k}-\frac{1}{2}<\frac{\mathrm{n}}{\sqrt{2}}<\mathrm{k}
\end{gathered}
$$

so that

$$
\left\{\frac{\mathrm{n}}{\sqrt{2}}\right\}>\frac{1}{2}
$$

Next let $n \in\left(g^{\prime}\right)$ so that $a(n) \equiv 0(\bmod 2)$. Then

$$
\begin{gathered}
{[\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}]=2 \mathrm{k}} \\
2 \mathrm{k}<\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}<2 \mathrm{k}+1 \\
\mathrm{k}<\frac{\mathrm{n}}{\sqrt{2}}<\mathrm{k}+\frac{1}{2}
\end{gathered}
$$

so that

$$
\left\{\frac{\mathrm{n}}{\sqrt{2}}\right\}<\frac{1}{2}
$$

This completes the proof of the theorem.
Theorem 7.8

$$
\begin{equation*}
g^{\prime}=a\left(\frac{1}{2} a g^{t}\right)+1 \tag{7.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. This is equivalent to

$$
\mathrm{dg}^{\prime}-1=\mathrm{b}\left(\frac{1}{2} \mathrm{ag}^{\prime}\right)
$$

which in turn is equivalent to

$$
\begin{equation*}
d^{\prime} a g^{\prime}=b\left(\frac{1}{2} a^{\prime}\right) \tag{7.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $d^{\prime}(2 n)=b(n)$, Eq. (7.30) follows at once.
Theorem 7.9

$$
\left.\begin{array}{c}
\left\{\begin{array} { l } 
{ d ^ { \prime } ( 2 n ) = 2 d ^ { \prime } ( n ) + 1 } \\
{ d ^ { \prime } ( 2 n ) = 2 d ^ { \prime } ( n ) }
\end{array} \quad \left(n \underset{(n)(g)}{\in} \in\left(g^{\prime}\right)\right.\right.
\end{array}\right)
$$

We show first that Theorems 7.9 and 7.10 are equivalent. Since $d^{\prime}(2 n)=b(n)$, (7.31) may be replaced by
while (7.3) may be replaced by

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\mathrm{bg}=2 \mathrm{~d}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}+1  \tag{7.33}\\
\mathrm{bg}^{\prime}=2 \mathrm{~d}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}^{\prime}
\end{array}\right.
$$

(

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\operatorname{ad}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}=2 \mathrm{~d}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}-\mathrm{g}  \tag{7.34}\\
\mathrm{ad}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}^{\prime}=2 d^{\prime} \mathrm{g}^{\prime}-\mathrm{g}^{\prime}
\end{array}\right.
$$

Since, by (7.5),

$$
\operatorname{ad} \mathrm{g}=\mathrm{d}^{\prime} \mathrm{ag}, \quad \quad \operatorname{ad} \mathrm{~g}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}^{\prime}-\mathrm{d}^{\prime} a g^{\prime}=1,
$$

(7.34) is the same as

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
d^{\prime} a g=2 d^{\prime} g-g  \tag{7.35}\\
d^{\prime} a g^{\prime}=2 d^{\prime} g^{\prime}-g^{\prime}-1
\end{array} .\right.
$$

But $d^{\prime} \mathrm{a}=\mathrm{d}-1$, so that (7.35) becomes

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\mathrm{dg}-1=2 \mathrm{~d}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}-\mathrm{g}  \tag{7.36}\\
\mathrm{dg} \mathrm{~g}^{\prime}=2 \mathrm{~d}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}^{\prime}-\mathrm{g}^{\prime}
\end{array}\right.
$$

which is the same as (7.33), This proves the equivalence of (7.31) and (7.32).
We shall now prove (7.32). We have first

$$
\begin{aligned}
a d^{\prime} \mathrm{a} & =\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~d}-1)=\mathrm{b}-2 \\
2 d^{\prime} \mathrm{a}-\mathrm{a} & =2(\mathrm{~d}-1)-\mathrm{a}=\mathrm{b}-2
\end{aligned}
$$

so that
(7.37)

$$
a d^{\prime} a=2 d^{\prime} a-a
$$

Secondly

$$
\begin{aligned}
a d^{\prime} b & =a \delta=b+2 d \\
2 d^{\prime} b-b & =2 \delta-b=b+2 d
\end{aligned}
$$

so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
a d^{\prime} b=2 d^{\prime} b-b \tag{7.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

Clearly (7.37) and (7.38) imply (7.32).
Theorem 7.11. We have
(7.39)

$$
c^{\prime}(n)+n-1=d^{\prime}(2 n-1)
$$

where $c^{\prime}(n)$ and $c(n)$ are complementary.
Proof. Put

$$
\begin{aligned}
\overline{\mathrm{c}}(\mathrm{n}) & =d^{\prime}(2 n-1)-(n-1) \\
& =\left[\frac{1}{2}(2+\sqrt{2})(2 n-1)\right]-(n-1) \\
& =\left[n+\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(2 n-1)\right]=\left[(1+\sqrt{2}) n-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

It follows from (7.15) that

$$
\bar{c}(n)=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
d(n)  \tag{7.40}\\
d(n)-1
\end{array} \quad\binom{\left.n \in\left(f^{\prime}\right)\right)}{n \in(f)}\right.
$$

In order to prove that $\overline{\mathrm{c}}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{c}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})$, it will suffice to show that c and $\overline{\mathrm{c}}$ are complementary. Now, by (7.31),

$$
\mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n})=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\mathrm{d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})+1 \\
\mathrm{~d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})
\end{array} \quad\left(\begin{array}{l}
\mathrm{n} \\
\mathrm{n} \\
\in
\end{array} \underset{(\mathrm{~g})}{(\mathrm{g})}\right)\right.
$$

Thus

$$
(c)=\left(d^{\prime} g+1\right) \cup\left(d^{\prime} g^{\prime}\right)
$$

$$
(c)=\left(d f^{\prime}\right) \cup(d f-1)
$$

Since

$$
\begin{aligned}
& d^{\prime} g+1=d^{\prime} a f+1=d f \\
& d f-1=d^{\prime} a f=d^{\prime} g
\end{aligned}
$$

it follows that
$(c)=(d f) \quad \cup\left(d^{\prime} g^{\prime}\right)$
$(c)=\left(d^{\prime}\right) \cup\left(d^{\prime} g\right) \quad$.
Therefore

$$
\text { (c) } \begin{aligned}
\cup(\bar{c}) & =(d f) \cup\left(\mathrm{df}^{\prime}\right) \cup\left(\mathrm{d}^{\prime} g\right) \cup\left(\mathrm{d}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}^{\prime}\right) \\
& =(\mathrm{d}) \cup\left(\mathrm{d}^{\prime}\right)=\underset{\sim}{N}
\end{aligned}
$$

while (c) $\cap(\bar{c})$ is vacuous. This completes the proof of the Theorem.
Theorem 7.12. We have
(7.41)

$$
a c^{\prime}(n)=c^{\prime}(n)+n-1
$$

In view of (7.39), (7.41) is the same as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{ac}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{d}^{\prime}(2 \mathrm{n}-1) \tag{7.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof of (7.41). By (7.40),

$$
c^{\prime}(n)=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
d(n) \\
d(n)-1
\end{array} \quad\left\{\begin{array}{l}
n \in\left(f^{\prime}\right) \\
n \in(f)
\end{array}\right),\right.
$$

so that

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
c^{\prime} f^{\prime}=d f^{\prime} \\
c^{\prime} f=d f-1
\end{array}\right.
$$

Thus

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\mathrm{ac}^{\prime} \mathrm{f}^{\prime}=\mathrm{adf} f^{\prime}=\mathrm{bf} f^{\prime}-1 \\
\mathrm{ac} \mathrm{c}^{\prime} \mathrm{f}=\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{df}-1)=\mathrm{bf}-2
\end{array}\right.
$$

It follows that

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
a c^{\prime} f^{\prime}-c^{\prime} f^{\prime}=b f^{\prime}-1-d f^{\prime}=f^{\prime}-1 \\
a c^{\prime} f-c^{\prime} f=b f-2-(d f-1)=f-1
\end{array}\right.
$$

and therefore

$$
a c^{\prime}(n)-c^{\prime}(n)=n-1 .
$$

Theorem 7.13. We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
a^{2} c^{\prime}(n)=2 c^{\prime}(n)-1 . \tag{7.43}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. By (7.32),

$$
\mathrm{ad}^{\prime}(2 \mathrm{n}-1)=2 \mathrm{~d}^{\prime}(2 \mathrm{n}-1)-(2 \mathrm{n}-1)
$$

Then by (7.42),

$$
a^{2} c^{\prime}(n)=\operatorname{ad}^{\prime}(2 n-1)=2 a c^{\prime}(n)-(2 n-1)
$$

Combining this with (7.41), we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
a^{2} c^{\prime}(n) & =2\left(c^{\prime}(n)+n-1\right)-(2 n-1) \\
& =2 c^{\prime}(n)-1
\end{aligned}
$$

Theorem 7.14. There exists a strictly monotone function $\theta$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{c}^{\prime}=\mathrm{f} \theta \tag{7.44}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. This result is implied by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{f}^{\prime}=\mathrm{cg} . \tag{7.45}
\end{equation*}
$$

To prove (7.45) we take

$$
\mathrm{f}^{\prime}=\mathrm{df}=\mathrm{acf}
$$

Since

$$
\mathrm{ac}-\mathrm{ca}=\mathrm{ab}-\mathrm{ba}-1=\mathrm{s}-1,
$$

it follows that

$$
\operatorname{acf}-\mathrm{caf}=0
$$

Hence

$$
\mathrm{f}^{\mathrm{t}}=\mathrm{caf}=\mathrm{cg}
$$

Theorem 7.15. There exists a strictly monotone function $\psi$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{f} \psi=\mathrm{d}^{\prime} \tag{7.46}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. This is an immediate consequence of $f^{\prime}=d f$.
Theorem 7.16. There exists a strictly monotone function $h$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{fh}=\mathrm{b} . \tag{7.47}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. Since $f^{\prime}=d f=a c f$, it follows that ( $f^{\prime}$ ) $\subset(a)$ and therefore (b) $\subset(f)$. Theorem 7.17. We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\psi(2 n)=h(n) . \tag{7.48}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. By (7.46),

$$
\mathrm{f} \psi(2 \mathrm{n})=\mathrm{d}^{\prime}(2 \mathrm{n})=\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{n})
$$

and (7.48) follows at once.
Theorem 7.18. We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
c=\epsilon a+1 \tag{7.49}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. We recall that

$$
\epsilon(2 \mathrm{n})=\epsilon(2 \mathrm{n}-1)+1=\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n}) .
$$

Also

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{ll}
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n}) \equiv 1 & (\bmod 2) \\
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n}) \equiv 0 & (\bmod 2) \\
\rightleftarrows \mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{~g}) \\
\hline
\end{array} \mathrm{g}^{\prime}\right)
$$

1. Let $\mathrm{n}=\mathrm{g}(\mathrm{k})$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\epsilon \mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})+1 & =\mathrm{d}\left(\frac{1}{2}(\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})+1)\right)=\mathrm{d}\left(\frac{1}{2}(\mathrm{ag}(\mathrm{k})+1)\right) \\
& =\mathrm{d}\left(\frac{1}{2}\left(\mathrm{a}^{2} \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{k})+1\right)\right)=\mathrm{df}(\mathrm{k})
\end{aligned}
$$

so that
(7.50)

$$
\epsilon \mathrm{ag}+1=\mathrm{df}
$$

2. Let $\mathrm{n} \in\left(\mathrm{g}^{\mathrm{r}}\right)$ and put

$$
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})=[\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}]=2 \mathrm{k}, \quad \mathrm{k}=\left[\frac{\mathrm{n}}{\sqrt{2}}\right]
$$

By (7.28)

$$
\left\{\frac{\mathrm{n}}{\sqrt{2}}\right\}<\frac{1}{2}
$$

We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\epsilon \mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})+1 & =\mathrm{d}\left(\frac{1}{2} \mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})\right)+1=\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{k})+1 \\
& =\mathrm{k}+[\sqrt{2} \mathrm{k}]+1 \\
& =\left[\frac{\mathrm{n}}{\sqrt{2}}\right]+\sqrt{2}\left(\frac{\mathrm{n}}{\sqrt{2}}-\left\{\frac{\mathrm{n}}{\sqrt{2}}\right\}\right)-\left\{\mathrm{n}-\sqrt{2}\left\{\frac{\mathrm{n}}{\sqrt{2}}\right\}\right\}+1 \\
& =\mathrm{n}+\left[\frac{\mathrm{n}}{\sqrt{2}}\right]=\sqrt{2}\left\{\frac{\mathrm{n}}{\sqrt{2}}\right\}-\left(1-\sqrt{2}\left\{\frac{\mathrm{n}}{2}\right\}\right)+1 \\
& =\mathrm{n}+\left[\frac{\mathrm{n}}{\sqrt{2}}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

On the other hand

$$
\mathrm{d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})=\left[\frac{1}{2}(2+\sqrt{2}) \mathrm{n}\right]=\mathrm{n}+\left[\frac{\mathrm{n}}{\sqrt{2}}\right]
$$

so that
(7.51) $\quad \epsilon \mathrm{gg}^{\prime}+1=\mathrm{d}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}^{\prime}$.

Combining (7.50) and (7.51) we get

$$
(\epsilon \mathrm{a}+1)=(\mathrm{df}) \cup\left(\mathrm{d}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}^{\mathrm{t}}\right)=\text { (c) ; }
$$

the last equality appeared in the proof of Theorem 7.11.
Theorem 7.19. We have
(7.52)

$$
\mathrm{e}\left(\mathrm{c}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})+1\right)=\mathrm{n} .
$$

Proof. By (7.40)

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
c^{\prime} f(n)=d f(n)-1 \\
c^{\prime} f^{\prime}(n)=d f^{\prime}(n)
\end{array}\right.
$$

so that

$$
\left\{\begin{aligned}
c^{\prime} f(n)+1 & =d f(n) \\
c^{\prime} f^{\prime}(n)+1 & =d f^{\prime}(n)+1
\end{aligned}\right.
$$

Since

$$
\mathrm{df}^{\imath}+1=\mathrm{d}^{2} \mathrm{f}+1=\delta_{\mathrm{f}}
$$

it follows that

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
c^{\prime} f(n)+1=d f(n) \\
c^{\prime} f^{\prime}(n)+1=\delta f(n)
\end{array}\right.
$$

Therefore

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
e\left(c^{\prime} f(n)+1\right)=f(n) \\
e\left(c^{\prime} f^{\prime}(n)+1\right)=d f(n)=f^{\prime}(n)
\end{array} .\right.
$$

This evidently proves (7.52).
Remark. $\quad c^{\prime}(n)+1 \neq d(n)$.
Theorem 7.20. We have

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
c^{\prime} f=d^{\prime} g=d^{\prime} a f  \tag{7.53}\\
c^{\prime} f^{\prime}=d f^{\prime}
\end{array}\right.
$$

Proof. We have
(7.54)

$$
c^{\prime}(n)=\left[(1+\sqrt{2}) n-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right]
$$

and

$$
\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{f}\}<\frac{1}{2}, \quad\left\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{f}^{\mathrm{f}}\right\}>\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}
$$

Hence

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
c^{\prime} f=d f-1 \\
c^{\prime} f=d f^{\prime}
\end{array}\right.
$$

Since

$$
\mathrm{d}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}=\mathrm{d}^{\prime} \mathrm{af}=\mathrm{df}-1
$$

(7.53) follows at once.

Theorem 7.21. We have
(7.55)

$$
c^{\prime}(n) \leq d(n) \leq c^{\prime}(n)+1 \leq p(n)
$$

and
(7.56)

$$
\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{k})=\mathrm{n} \text { if and only if } \mathrm{k} \in[\mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{n}), \mathrm{p}(\mathrm{n})+1] .
$$

The interval $[d(n), p(n)+1]$ contains exactly three integers-if $n \in(d)$ and contains exactly two integers if $n \in\left(d^{\prime}\right)$.

Proof. Inequalities (7.55) come from

$$
\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n})=[(1+\sqrt{2}) \mathrm{n}]
$$

together with (4.4) and (7.54). To prove (7.56) we use

$$
e(d(n))=e(p(n)+1)=n
$$

and

$$
\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{n})+2=\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n}+1)
$$

The final statement in the theorem follows from

$$
\begin{gathered}
d(n+1)-d(n)=3 \text { if and only if } n \in(d) . \\
\text { 8. THEOREMS INVOLVING } \sigma \text { AND } \tau
\end{gathered}
$$

Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{n}=\mathrm{f}_{1} \mathrm{P}_{1}+\mathrm{f}_{2} \mathrm{P}_{2}+\mathrm{f}_{3} \mathrm{P}_{3}+\cdots \tag{8.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

be the first canonical representation of $n$. Define $\sigma(n)$ by means of (8.2) $\quad \sigma(n) \equiv f_{1}+f_{2}+f_{3}+\cdots \quad(\bmod 2)$.

If

$$
\mathrm{f}_{1}=\cdots=\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{k}-1}=0, \quad \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{k}} \neq 0
$$

put

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tau(\mathrm{n}) \equiv \mathrm{k} \quad(\bmod 2) \tag{8.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

We may assume that $\sigma(n), \tau(n)$ take on the values 0,1 .
It follows from (8.1) that

$$
p(n)=\cdot 0 f_{1} f_{2} f_{3} \cdots
$$

Since

$$
\mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{k}} \equiv \mathrm{k} \quad(\bmod 2)
$$

it follows that
(8.4)

$$
\mathrm{n}+\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{n}) \equiv \sigma(\mathrm{n}) \quad(\bmod 2)
$$

Since

$$
\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{n}+1)=\mathrm{n}+\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{n})+3
$$

we get
(8.5)

$$
a(n+1) \equiv b(n+1) \equiv \sigma(n)+1 \quad(\bmod 2)
$$

In the next place, by Theorem 5.4,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\text { (d) }=\{\mathrm{n} \mid \tau(\mathrm{n})=0\} \tag{8.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

so that
(8.7)

$$
\left(\mathrm{d}^{\prime}\right)=\{\mathrm{n} \mid \tau(\mathrm{n})=1\}
$$

Since (b) $\subset\left(\mathrm{d}^{\mathrm{r}}\right)$ it follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tau(b(\mathrm{n}))=1 \quad(\mathrm{n}=1,2,3, \cdots) \tag{8.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

By (8.5)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma(b(n)) \equiv a(b(n)+1) \equiv a b(n) \equiv 0 \quad(\bmod 2) \tag{8.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

On the other hand, for $n$ such that $a(n) \in\left(d^{\prime}\right)$,

$$
\sigma(a(n))+1 \equiv a(a(n)+1) \equiv a^{2}(n)+1
$$

Since ( $\mathrm{d}^{\prime}$ ) $\subset(\mathrm{f})$,

$$
\mathrm{a}^{2}(\mathrm{n})=2 \mathrm{n}-1 \equiv 1 \quad(\bmod 2)
$$

and therefore

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma(a(n))=1 \quad\left(a(n) \in\left(d^{\top}\right)\right) \tag{8.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Combining (8.8), (8.9) and (8.10), we get the following.
Theorem 8.1. The set (b) is characterized by
(8.11)

$$
(b)=\{n \mid \sigma(n)=0, \quad \tau(n)=1\}
$$

Put

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{i}, \mathrm{j}}=\{\mathrm{n} \mid \tau(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{i}, \quad \sigma(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{j}\} \quad(\mathrm{i}, \mathrm{j}=0,1) \tag{8.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus by (8.11)
(b) $=A_{1,0}$,
$(a)=A_{0,0} \cup A_{0,1} \cup A_{1,1}$.
Theorem 8.2. We have

$$
\begin{gather*}
\mathrm{A}_{0,0}=\left(\mathrm{ad}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}^{\dagger}\right)  \tag{8.14}\\
\mathrm{A}_{0,1}=\left(\mathrm{af}^{\dagger}\right)=(\mathrm{adf})  \tag{8.15}\\
\mathrm{A}_{1,1}=\left(\mathrm{ac}^{\prime}\right)=\left(\mathrm{adf}^{\prime}\right) \cup\left(\mathrm{ad}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}\right) \tag{8.16}
\end{gather*}
$$

Proof.

1. Let $n \in(a) \cap\left(d^{\prime}\right)$. By (8.10), $\sigma(n)=1$; also by (8.7), $\tau(n)=1$. Therefore
(a) $\cap\left(d^{\prime}\right) \subset A_{1,1}$.
2. Next let $n \in(d)$, so that $\tau(n)=0$. Since $d=a c$ and $(c)=(d f) \cup\left(d^{\prime} g^{\prime}\right)$, we have
(8.18)

$$
(d)=(a d f) \cup\left(a d^{\prime} g^{\prime}\right)
$$

Since $n \in(d)$,

$$
\sigma(n) \equiv a(n+1)+1 \equiv a(n)+1
$$

Let $n=a(k), k \in(d f)$. Then

$$
\sigma(\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{k})) \equiv \mathrm{a}^{2}(\mathrm{k})+1 \equiv 1
$$

Hence
(8.19)

$$
(a d f) \subset A_{0,1}
$$

Now let $\mathrm{n}=\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{k}), \mathrm{k} \in\left(\mathrm{d}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}^{\mathrm{r}}\right)$. Then

$$
\sigma(\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{k})) \equiv \mathrm{a}^{2}(\mathrm{k})+1 \equiv 0,
$$

so that
(8.20)

$$
\left(a d^{\prime} f^{\prime}\right) \subset A_{0,0}
$$

Since

$$
\begin{aligned}
(\mathrm{a}) & =\left(\text { (a) } \cap\left(\mathrm{d}^{\prime}\right)\right) \cup(\mathrm{ac}) \\
& =\left(\text { (a) } \cap\left(\mathrm{d}^{\prime}\right)\right) \cup(\text { adf }) \cup\left(\mathrm{ad}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}^{\prime}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

it follows that the inclusion sign $\subset$ in (8.17), (8.19) and (8.20) may be replaced by equality. This completes the proof of the theorem.

Theorem 8.3. We have

$$
\begin{cases}\sigma(\mathrm{n})=\tau(\mathrm{n})  \tag{8.21}\\ \sigma(\mathrm{n})+\tau(\mathrm{n})=1 & (\mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{~g}) \\ \left.\mathrm{n} \in\left(\mathrm{~g}^{\prime}\right)\right)\end{cases}
$$

Proof. Since $g=a f,(g) \subset(a)$ but (g) $\nsubseteq\left(a^{\prime}\right)$. Consequently, by the last theorem,

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
(\mathrm{g})=\mathrm{A}_{0,0} \cup \mathrm{~A}_{1,1}  \tag{8.22}\\
\left(\mathrm{~g}^{\prime}\right)=\mathrm{A}_{0,1} \cup \mathrm{~A}_{1,0}
\end{array}\right.
$$

and (8.21) follows at once.
Theorem 8.4. We have
(8.23)

$$
\sigma(\mathrm{n}-1)=0 \rightleftarrows \mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{~g})
$$

Proof. By (7.6),

$$
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n}) \equiv 1 \quad(\bmod 2) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{~g})
$$

Since

$$
\sigma(n-1) \equiv a(n)+1 \quad(\bmod 2)
$$

(8.23) follows at once.

Theorem 8.5. We have

$$
\begin{cases}(\mathrm{dg})=\{\mathrm{n} \mid \mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{~d}), & \sigma(\mathrm{n})=1\}  \tag{8.24}\\ \left(\mathrm{dg} \mathrm{~g}^{\prime}\right)=\{\mathrm{n} \mid \mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{~d}), & \sigma(\mathrm{n})=0\}\end{cases}
$$

Proof. Since (d) $\subset$ (a) and

$$
\tau(\mathrm{n})=0 \quad(\mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{~d})),
$$

it follows from Theorem 8.2 that

$$
(d)=A_{0,0} \cup A_{0,1}=\left(a d^{\prime} g^{\prime}\right) \cup\left(a f^{\prime}\right) .
$$

Thus
(8.25)
$(d g) \cup\left(d g^{\prime}\right)=\left(a^{\prime} g^{\prime}\right) \cup\left(\mathrm{af}^{\imath}\right)$.
Now assume that
$\mathrm{n} \in\left(\mathrm{af}^{\mathrm{r}}\right)$, $\mathrm{n} \in\left(\mathrm{dg}^{\prime}\right)=\left(\mathrm{acg}^{\prime}\right)$.

It follows that there exists an integer $k$ such that

$$
\mathrm{k} \in\left(\mathrm{f}^{\mathrm{t}}\right), \quad \mathrm{k} \in\left(\mathrm{cg}^{\mathrm{t}}\right)
$$

But

$$
\mathrm{f}^{\prime}=\mathrm{df}=\mathrm{acf}=\mathrm{caf}=\mathrm{cg},
$$

so that

$$
k \in(c \mathrm{~g}), \quad k \in\left(\mathrm{cg}^{\prime}\right)
$$

which is impossible.
Next assume that

$$
\mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{dg}), \quad \mathrm{n} \in\left(\mathrm{ad}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}^{\prime}\right)
$$

Then there is a $k$ such that

$$
k \in(\mathrm{cg}), \quad k \in\left(d^{\prime} g^{\prime}\right) .
$$

But

$$
\mathrm{cg}=\mathrm{caf}=\mathrm{acf}=\mathrm{df},
$$

so that

$$
k \in(d g), \quad k \in\left(d^{\prime} g^{\prime}\right)
$$

which is impossible. It therefore follows from (8.25) that

$$
(\mathrm{dg})=\left(a f^{\prime}\right), \quad\left(\mathrm{dg}^{\prime}\right)=\left(a d^{\prime} \mathrm{g}^{\prime}\right)
$$

This completes the proof of the theorem.
Theorem 8.6. We have

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{ll}
(\delta \mathrm{g})=\{\mathrm{n} \mid \mathrm{n} \in(\delta), & \sigma(\mathrm{n})=1\}  \tag{8.26}\\
\left(\delta \mathrm{g}_{\mathrm{f}}^{\mathrm{f}}\right)=\{\mathrm{n} \mid \mathrm{n} \in(\delta), & \sigma(\mathrm{n})=0\}
\end{array} .\right.
$$

Proof. Since

$$
(\delta)=\bigcup_{1}^{\infty} \mathrm{A}_{2 \mathrm{k}+1}
$$

and $\mathrm{e} \delta=\mathrm{d}$, Theorem 8.6 is an immediate corollary of Theorem 8.5.

## SUMMARY OF FORMULAS

1. $p(n)=2 n+e(n)$
2. $e(p(n))=e(p(n)+1)=n$
3. $e(p(n)+2)=n+1$
4. $a(n+1)=e(n)+n+1$
5. $\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{n}+1)=\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{n})+\mathrm{n}+3$
6. $d(n+1)=p(n)+2$
7. $a d(n)=b(n)-1, \quad a(d(n)+1)=b(n)+1, \quad a(d(n)-1)=b(n)-2$
8. $\quad e d(n)=n$
9. $\quad e b(n)=a(n)$
10. $d^{2}(n)=\delta(n)-1$
11. $e \delta(n)=d(n)$
12. $e^{2} \delta(n)=n$
13. $e(\delta(n)-1)=d(n)$
14. $e^{2}(\delta(n)-1)=n$
15. $a b(n)=a(n)+b(n)=2 d(n)$
16. $d b(n)=b d(n)+1$
17. $a d-d a+1=a b-b a$
18. $a \delta(n)=d(n)+\delta(n)$
19. $a(n)=e(b(n)-1)=\operatorname{ead}(n)$
20. $\quad$ ebd $(n)=b(n)-1$
21. $d^{\prime} a(n)=d(n)-1$
22. $d^{\prime}(a(n)+1)=d(n)+1$
23. $\epsilon(2 \mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{n}))=\delta(\mathrm{n})-1$
24. $\epsilon(2 \mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{n})+1)=\delta(\mathrm{n})+1$
25. $e(d(n)-1)=n-1$
26. $\quad e\left(a^{2}(n)+a(n)\right)=a(n)$
27. $e(b(n)-1)=a(n)$
28. $a(d(n)-1)=b(n)-2$
29. $\quad \epsilon(2 \mathrm{n})=\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n}), \quad \epsilon(2 \mathrm{n}-1)=\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{n})-1$
30. $e(\epsilon(n))=[n / 2]$
31. $\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{n})-\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{n}-1)=1 \nLeftarrow \mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{d})$
32. $\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n}+1)=\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})+2 \nsim \mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{d})$
33. $\mathrm{d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n}+1)=\mathrm{d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})+2 \not \approx \mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{a})$
34. $\quad d(n)=a c(n), \quad c(n)=b(n)-d^{\prime}(n)$
35. $\quad A_{1}=d(\mathbb{N})-1$
36. $A_{2 k}=d \delta^{k-1} \epsilon(\mathbb{N}) \quad(\mathrm{k}=1,2,3, \cdots)$
37. $A_{2 k+1}=\delta^{k} \epsilon(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}}) \quad(\mathrm{k}=1,2,3, \cdots)$
38. $\quad B_{2 k}=d \delta^{k-1} d(\underset{\sim}{N}) \quad(k=1,2,3, \cdots)$
39. $B_{2 k+1}=\delta^{k} d(\underset{\sim}{N}) \quad(k=1,2,3, \cdots)$
$\infty$
40. $\quad \mathrm{d}(\underset{\sim}{N})=\cup_{1} \mathrm{~A}_{2 \mathrm{k}}$
41. $\delta(\underset{\sim}{N})=\cup_{1}^{\infty} A_{2 k+1}$
42. $\quad \epsilon(\mathbb{N})=d(\underset{\sim}{N}) \cup(d(\mathbb{N})-1)$
43. $a^{2} b=2 b-1$

44: $\mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{d}) \rightleftarrows\left\{\frac{\mathrm{n}}{1+\sqrt{2}}\right\}>2-\sqrt{2}$
45. $b^{k}=u_{k} a+v_{k} b$,
where

$$
u_{k}=\frac{\alpha^{k+1}-\beta^{k+1}}{\alpha-\beta}, \quad v_{k}=u_{k+1}-u_{k}, \quad \alpha=2+\sqrt{2}, \quad \beta=2-\sqrt{2} .
$$

46. $a b^{k}=u_{k} n+v_{k} b-t_{k}$,
where
$u_{k}=2^{k-1} Q_{k-1}, \quad v_{k}=2^{k-1} Q_{k}, \quad t_{k}=\frac{1}{7}\left(2^{k+1} P_{k+1}-3 \cdot 2^{k} P_{k}-2\right)$,
and
$\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{k}}+\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{k}-1}$.
47. $s=a b-b a$
48. $\quad \operatorname{af}(\mathrm{n})=1, \quad \operatorname{af}(n)=2$
49. $\quad a^{2} f(n) \equiv 1, \quad a^{2} f^{\prime}(n) \equiv 0 \quad(\bmod 2)$
50. $\quad \mathrm{t}=\mathrm{ad}^{\prime}-\mathrm{d}^{\prime} \mathrm{a}$
51. $\operatorname{tg}(n)=0, \quad \operatorname{tg}^{\prime}(n)=1$
52. $\operatorname{ag}(\mathrm{n}) \equiv 1, \quad \operatorname{ag}(\mathrm{n}) \equiv 0 \quad(\bmod 2)$
53. $\mathrm{g}=\mathrm{af}$
54. $\mathrm{df}=\mathrm{f}^{\prime}$
55. $\mathrm{df}-\mathrm{dg}=1$
56. $\mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{f}) \rightleftarrows\{\sqrt{2} \mathrm{n}\}<\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$
57. $b f-a f^{\prime}=1$
58. $f^{\prime}=$ acf $=$ caf
59. $\mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{g}) \rightleftarrows\left\{\frac{\mathrm{n}}{\sqrt{2}}\right\}<\frac{1}{2}$
60. $g^{\prime}=a\left(\frac{1}{2} a g^{\prime}\right)+1$
61. $\begin{cases}\mathrm{d}^{\prime}(2 \mathrm{n})=2 \mathrm{~d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})+1 & (\mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{g})) \\ \mathrm{d}^{\prime}(2 \mathrm{n})=2 \mathrm{~d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n}) & \left(\mathrm{n} \in\left(\mathrm{g}^{\prime}\right)\right)\end{cases}$
62. $\quad \operatorname{ad}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})=2 \mathrm{~d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})-\mathrm{n}$
63. $a c^{\prime}(n)=c^{\prime}(n)+n-1=d^{\prime}(2 n-1)$
64. $\quad c^{\prime}(n)= \begin{cases}d(n) & \left(n \in\left(f^{\prime}\right)\right) \\ d(n)+1 & (n \in(f))\end{cases}$
65. $\left\{\begin{array}{l}(\mathrm{c})=(\mathrm{df}) \cup\left(\mathrm{d}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}^{\prime}\right) \\ \left(\mathrm{c}^{\prime}\right)=(\mathrm{df}) \cup\left(\mathrm{d}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}^{\prime}\right)\end{array}\right.$
66. $\quad a^{2} c^{\prime}(n)=2 c^{\prime}(n)-1$
67. $\mathrm{c}^{\prime}=\mathrm{f} \theta$
68. $\mathrm{d}^{\prime}=\mathrm{f} \psi$
69. $\quad \mathrm{fh}=\mathrm{b}$
70. $\psi(2 \mathrm{n})=\mathrm{h}(\mathrm{n})$
71. $\mathrm{c}=\epsilon \mathrm{a}+1$
72. $e\left(c^{\prime}(n)+1\right)=n$
73. $\left\{\begin{array}{l}c^{\prime} f=d^{\prime} g=d^{\prime} a f \\ c^{\prime} f=d f^{\prime}\end{array}\right.$
74. $(\mathrm{b})=\{\mathrm{n} \mid \sigma(\mathrm{n})=0, \quad \tau(\mathrm{n})=1\}$
75. $A_{i, j}=\{n \mid \tau(n)=i, \quad \sigma(n)=j\} \quad(i, j=0,1)$
76. $A_{0,0}=\left(\right.$ ad' $\left.^{\prime}{ }^{\prime}\right)$
77. $\mathrm{A}_{0,1}=\left(\mathrm{af}^{\mathrm{t}}\right)=(\mathrm{adf})$
78. $\mathrm{A}_{1,1}=\left(\mathrm{ac}^{\prime}\right)=\left(\mathrm{adfl}^{\prime}\right) \cup\left(\mathrm{ad}^{\prime} \mathrm{g}\right)$
79. $\begin{cases}\sigma(\mathrm{n})=\tau(\mathrm{n}) & (\mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{g})) \\ \sigma(\mathrm{n})=\tau(\mathrm{n})=1 & \left(\mathrm{n} \in\left(\mathrm{g}^{\prime}\right)\right)\end{cases}$
80. $\sigma(\mathrm{n}-1)=0 \rightleftarrows \mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{g})$
81. $\{(\mathrm{dg})=\{\mathrm{n} \mid \mathrm{n} \in(\mathrm{d}), \quad \sigma(\mathrm{n})=1\}$
$\left\{\left(d^{t}\right)=\{n \mid n \in(d), \quad \sigma(n)=0\}\right.$
82. $\left\{\begin{array}{l}(\delta \mathrm{g})=\{\mathrm{n} \mid \mathrm{n} \in(\delta), \quad \sigma(\mathrm{n})=1\}\end{array}\right.$ $\left\{\left(\delta \mathrm{g}^{\mathrm{r}}\right)=\{\mathrm{n} \mid \mathrm{n} \in(\delta), \quad \sigma(\mathrm{n})=0\}\right.$

Table 1

| n | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 |
| ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| a | 1 | 2 | 4 | 5 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 11 | 12 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 18 | 19 | 21 | 22 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 28 |
| b | 3 | 6 | 10 | 13 | 17 | 20 | 23 | 27 | 30 | 34 | 37 | 40 | 44 | 47 | 51 | 54 | 58 | 61 | 64 | 68 |
| d | 2 | 4 | 7 | 9 | 12 | 14 | 16 | 19 | 21 | 24 | 26 | 28 | 31 | 33 | 36 | 38 | 41 | 43 | 45 | 48 |
| $\mathrm{~d}^{\mathrm{r}}$ | 1 | 3 | 5 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 11 | 13 | 15 | 17 | 18 | 20 | 22 | 23 | 25 | 27 | 29 | 30 | 32 | 34 |
| e | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 5 | 5 | 6 | 6 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 8 | 8 |
| p | 2 | 5 | 7 | 10 | 12 | 14 | 17 | 19 | 22 | 24 | 26 | 29 | 31 | 34 | 36 | 39 | 41 | 43 | 46 | 48 |
|  | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 23 | 24 |
|  | 5 | 10 | 17 | 22 | 29 | 34 | 39 | 46 | 51 | 58 | 63 | 68 | 75 | 80 | 87 | 92 | 99 | 104 | 109 | 116 |

Table 2

| n | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
| ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| a | 1 | 2 | 4 | 5 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 11 | 12 | 14 | 15 | 16 |
| ab | 4 | 8 | 14 | 18 | 24 | 28 | 32 | 38 | 42 | 48 | 52 | 56 |
| ba | 3 | 6 | 13 | 17 | 23 | 27 | 30 | 37 | 40 | 47 | 51 | 54 |
| S | 1 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 2 |
| f | 1 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 11 | 13 | 15 | 16 | 17 |
| f | 2 | 7 | 9 | 12 | 14 | 19 | 24 | 26 | 31 | 36 | 38 | 41 |

Table 3

| n | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
| :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| a | 1 | 2 | 4 | 5 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 11 | 12 | 14 | 15 | 16 |
| $\mathrm{~d}^{\prime}$ | 1 | 3 | 5 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 11 | 13 | 15 | 17 | 18 | 20 |
| $\mathrm{ad}^{\prime}$ | 1 | 4 | 7 | 8 | 11 | 14 | 15 | 18 | 21 | 24 | 25 | 28 |
| $\mathrm{~d}^{\prime} \mathrm{a}$ | 1 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 11 | 13 | 15 | 18 | 20 | 23 | 25 | 27 |
| t | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| g | 1 | 4 | 5 | 7 | 8 | 11 | 14 | 15 | 18 | 21 | 22 | 24 |
| $\mathrm{~g}^{\prime}$ | 2 | 3 | 6 | 9 | 10 | 12 | 13 | 16 | 17 | 19 | 20 | 23 |

Table 4

| n | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
| :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathrm{c}^{\prime}$ | 1 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 11 | 13 | 16 | 18 | 21 | 23 | 25 | 28 |
| c | 2 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 9 | 10 | 12 | 14 | 15 | 17 | 19 | 20 |
| $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ | 1 | 3 | 5 | 6 | 8 | 9 | 11 | 13 | 15 | 17 | 18 | 20 |
| $\mathrm{~d}^{\mathrm{r}}$ | 1 | 3 | 5 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 11 | 13 | 15 | 17 | 18 | 20 |
| $\psi$ | 1 | 2 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 12 | 13 | 14 |
| $\epsilon$ | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 |
| h | 2 | 5 | 7 | 9 | 12 | 14 | 17 | 19 | 22 | 25 | 27 | 29 |
| $\mathrm{c}^{\boldsymbol{\prime}}+1$ | 2 | 5 | 7 | 9 | 12 | 14 | 17 | 19 | 22 | 24 | 26 | 28 |

REFERENCES

1. L. Carlitz, V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., and Richard Scoville, "Fibonacci Representations," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 10, No. 1 (1972), pp. 1-28.
2. L. Carlitz, V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., and Richard Scoville, "Lucas Representations," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 10, No. 1 (1972), pp. 29-42.
3. L. Carlitz, V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., and Richard Scoville, "Fibonacci Representations of Higher Order," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 10, No. 1 (1972), pp. 43-69.
4. L. Carlitz, V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., and Richard Scoville, "Fibonacci Representations of Higher Order - II," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 10, No. 1 (1972), pp. 71-80.
5. Problem 5254, American Math. Monthly, Vol. 71 (1964), p. 1138; Solution, Vol. 72 (1965), pp. 1144-1145.
6. Theodore Skolem, "On Certain Distributions of Integers in Pairs with Given Differences," Mathematica Scandinavica, Vol. 5 (1957), pp. 55-68.
7. T. J. Keller, "Generalizations of Zeckendorf's Theorem, " Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 10 (1972), pp. 95-102.

## ENUMERATION OF $3 \times 3$ ARRAYS

L. CARLITZ ${ }^{\star}$<br>Duke University, Durham, North Carolina

1. Let
(1.1)
$A=\left(a_{i j}\right)$
(i, $j=1,2,3)$
denote an array of non-negative integers. Let $H(r)$ denote the number of arrays (1.1) such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j}=r=\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{j i} \quad(i=1,2,3) . \tag{1.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

MacMahon [2, p. 161] has proved that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{r=0}^{\infty} H(r) x^{r}=\frac{1-x^{3}}{(1-x)^{6}}=\frac{1+x+x^{2}}{(1-x)^{5}} \tag{1.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

This result has recently been rediscovered by Anand, Demir and Gupta [1].
Let $\mathrm{H}(\mathrm{r}, \mathrm{t})$ denote the number of arrays (1.1) that satisfy (1.2) and also

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i=1}^{3} a_{i i}=t \tag{1.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

and let $H(r, s, t)$ denote the number of arrays (1.1) that satisfy (1.2), (1.4) and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i=1}^{3} a_{i, 4-i}=s \tag{1.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

MacMahon [2, pp. 162-163] has proved that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{r=0}^{\infty} H(r, r) x^{r}=\frac{1-x^{6}}{(1-x)^{3}\left(1-x^{3}\right)^{2}}=\frac{1+x^{3}}{(1-x)^{3}\left(1-x^{3}\right)} \tag{1.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

*Supported in part by NSF Grant GP-7855.
(1.7)

$$
\sum_{r=0}^{\infty} H(r, r, r) x^{r}=\frac{\left(1-x^{6}\right)^{2}}{\left(1-x^{3}\right)^{5}}=\frac{\left(1+x^{3}\right)^{2}}{\left(1-x^{3}\right)^{3}}
$$

In the present paper we show first that if
(1.8)

$$
\overline{\mathrm{H}}\left(\mathrm{r} ; \quad \lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \lambda_{3}, \lambda_{4}\right)=\sum_{\substack{a+\mathrm{b} \leq \mathrm{r} \\ \mathrm{c}+\mathrm{d} \leq \mathrm{r} \\ a+c \leq r \\ \mathrm{~b}+\mathrm{d} \leq \mathrm{r} \\ a+b+c+d \geq r}} \lambda_{1}^{a} \lambda_{2}^{\mathrm{b}} \lambda_{3}^{c} \lambda_{4}^{d}
$$

then

$$
\sum_{r=0}^{\infty} \bar{H}\left(r ; \lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \lambda_{3}, \lambda_{4}\right) x^{r}
$$

(1.9)

$$
=\frac{1-\lambda_{1} \lambda_{2} \lambda_{3} \lambda_{4} \mathrm{x}^{3}}{\left(1-\lambda_{1} \mathrm{x}\right)\left(1-\lambda_{2^{\mathrm{x}}}\right)\left(1-\lambda_{\left.3^{\mathrm{x}}\right)\left(1-\lambda_{4}\right.} \mathrm{x}\right)\left(1-\lambda_{1} \lambda_{4} \mathrm{x}\right)\left(1-\lambda_{2} \lambda_{3} \mathrm{x}\right)} .
$$

We show next that (1.9) implies

$$
\sum_{r, s, t=0}^{\infty} H(r, s, t) x^{r} y^{s} z^{t}
$$

(1.10)

$$
=\frac{1-x^{3} y^{3} z^{3}}{(\mathbb{1}-x y)^{2}(1-x z)^{2}\left(1-x y^{3} z\right)\left(1-x y z^{3}\right)}
$$

This in turn implies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{r, t=0}^{\infty} H(r, t) x^{r} z^{t}=\frac{1-x^{3} z^{3}}{(1-x)^{2}(1-x z)^{3}\left(1-x z^{3}\right)} \tag{1.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

which we show implies (1.6).
In the next place we prove

$$
\sum_{r, t=0}^{\infty} H(r, t, t) x^{r} z^{t}
$$

(1.12)

$$
=\frac{1+x^{2} z+4 x^{3} z^{3}-4 x^{5} z^{4}-x^{6} z^{6}-x^{8} z^{7}}{\left(1-x^{2} z^{4}\right)\left(1-x^{3} z^{3}\right)\left(1-x^{2} z\right)^{3}}
$$

which we show implies (1.7). We also give a combinatorial proof of (1.7).
Finally, if

$$
K(s, t)=\left\{\begin{array}{cl}
H(r, s, t) & (s+t=2 r)  \tag{1.13}\\
0 & (s+t \text { odd }),
\end{array}\right.
$$

we show that
(1.14) $\sum_{s, t=0}^{\infty} K(s, t) y^{s} z^{t}$

$$
=\frac{\left(1+y^{3} z^{3}\right)\left[1+4 y^{3} z^{3}+y^{6} z^{6}+4 y^{2} z^{2}\left(y^{2}+z^{2}\right)+y z\left(y^{4}+z^{4}\right)\right]}{\left(1-y^{5} z\right)^{2}\left(1-y z^{5}\right)^{2}}
$$

Moreover (1.14) contains (1.7).
2. Proof of (1.9). It follows from (1.8) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{H}\left(r ; \lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \lambda_{3}, \lambda_{4}\right)=S_{1}(r)-S_{2}(r), \tag{2.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{1}(r)=\sum_{\substack{a+b \leq r \\ c+d \leq r \\ a+c \leq r \\ b+d \leq r}} \lambda_{1}^{a} \lambda_{2}^{b} \lambda_{3}^{c} \lambda_{4}^{d} \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{S}_{2}(\mathrm{r})=\sum_{a+b+c+d<r} \lambda_{1}^{\mathrm{a}} \lambda_{2}^{\mathrm{b}} \lambda_{3}^{c} \lambda_{4}^{\mathrm{d}} . \tag{2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then by (2.2)

$$
\begin{aligned}
S_{1}(r)= & \sum_{b, c \leq r} \lambda_{2}^{b} \lambda_{3}^{c} \sum_{\substack{a \leq r-b \\
a \leq r-c}} \lambda_{1}^{a} \sum_{\substack{d \leq r-b \\
d \leq r-c}} \lambda_{4}^{d} \\
= & \sum_{b, c \leq r} \lambda_{2}^{r-b} \lambda_{3}^{r-c} \sum_{\substack{a \leq b \\
a \leq c}} \lambda_{1}^{a} \sum_{\substack{d \leq b \\
d \leq c}} \lambda_{4}^{d} \\
= & \sum_{b \leq c \leq r} \lambda_{2}^{r-b} \lambda_{3}^{r-c} \sum_{a \leq b} \lambda_{1}^{a} \sum_{d \leq b} \lambda_{4}^{d} \\
& +\sum_{c \leq b \leq r} \lambda_{2}^{r-b} \lambda_{3}^{r-c} \sum_{a \leq c} \lambda_{1}^{a} \sum_{d \leq c} \lambda_{4}^{d}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& -\sum_{b \leq r} \lambda_{2}^{\mathrm{r}-\mathrm{b}} \lambda_{3}^{\mathrm{r}-\mathrm{b}} \sum_{\mathrm{a} \leq \mathrm{b}} \lambda_{1}^{\mathrm{a}} \sum_{\mathrm{d} \leq \mathrm{b}} \lambda_{4}^{\mathrm{d}} \\
= & \sum_{\mathrm{b} \leq \mathrm{r}} \lambda_{2}^{\mathrm{r}-\mathrm{b}} \frac{1-\lambda_{3}^{\mathrm{r}-\mathrm{b}+1}}{1-\lambda_{3}} \frac{1-\lambda_{1}^{\mathrm{b}+1}}{1-\lambda_{1}} \frac{1-\lambda_{4}^{\mathrm{b}+1}}{1-\lambda_{4}} \\
& +\sum_{\mathrm{c} \leq \mathrm{r}} \lambda_{3}^{\mathrm{r}-\mathrm{c}} \frac{1-\lambda_{2}^{\mathrm{r}-\mathrm{c}+1}}{1-\lambda_{2}} \frac{1-\lambda_{1}^{\mathrm{c}+1}}{1-\lambda_{1}} \frac{1-\lambda_{4}^{\mathrm{c}+1}}{1-\lambda_{4}} \\
& -\sum_{\mathrm{b} \leq \mathrm{r}} \lambda_{2}^{\mathrm{r}-\mathrm{b}} \lambda_{3}^{\mathrm{r}-\mathrm{b}} \frac{1-\lambda_{1}^{\mathrm{b}+1}}{1-\lambda_{1}} \frac{1-\lambda_{4}^{\mathrm{b}+1}}{1-\lambda_{4}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

It follows that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{\mathrm{r}=0}^{\infty} \mathrm{S}_{1}(\mathrm{r}) \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{r}}= & \sum_{\mathrm{b}=0}^{\infty} \frac{1-\lambda_{1}^{\mathrm{b}+1}}{1-\lambda_{1}} \frac{1-\lambda_{4}^{\mathrm{b}+1}}{1-\lambda_{4}} \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{b}} \sum_{\mathrm{r}=0}^{\infty} \lambda_{2}^{\mathrm{r}} \frac{1-\lambda_{3}^{\mathrm{r}+1}}{1-\lambda_{3}} \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{r}} \\
& +\sum_{\mathrm{c}=0}^{\infty} \frac{1-\lambda_{1}^{\mathrm{c}+1}}{1-\lambda_{1}} \frac{1-\lambda_{4}^{\mathrm{c}+1}}{1-\lambda_{4}} \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{c}} \sum_{\mathrm{r}=0}^{\infty} \lambda_{3}^{\mathrm{r}} \frac{1-\lambda_{2}^{\mathrm{r}+1}}{1-\lambda_{2}} \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{r}} \\
& -\sum_{\mathrm{b}=0}^{\infty} \frac{1-\lambda_{1}^{\mathrm{b}+1}}{1-\lambda_{1}} \frac{1-\lambda_{4}^{\mathrm{b}+1}}{1-\lambda_{4}} \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{b}} \sum_{\mathrm{r}=0}^{\infty} \lambda_{2}^{\mathrm{r}} \lambda_{3}^{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{r}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Carrying out the summations and simplifying, we get
(2.4) $\quad \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} S_{1}(r) x^{r}=\frac{\left(1-\lambda_{1} \lambda_{4} x^{2}\right)\left(1-\lambda_{2} \lambda_{3} x^{2}\right)}{(1-\mathrm{x})\left(1-\lambda_{1} \mathrm{x}\right)\left(1-\lambda_{2} \mathrm{x}\right)\left(1-\lambda_{3} \mathrm{x}\right)\left(1-\lambda_{4} \mathrm{x}\right)\left(1-\lambda_{1} \lambda_{4} \mathrm{x}\right)\left(1-\lambda_{2} \lambda_{3} \mathrm{x}\right)} \cdot$

Similarly we find that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{r=0}^{\infty} S_{2}(r) x^{r}=\frac{x}{(1-x)\left(1-\lambda_{1} x\right)\left(1-\lambda_{2} x\right)\left(1-\lambda_{3} x\right)\left(1-\lambda_{4} x\right)} \tag{2.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\sum_{r=0}^{\infty} \bar{H}\left(r ; \lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \lambda_{3}, \lambda_{4}\right) x^{r}=\sum_{r=0}^{\infty} S_{1}(r) x^{r}-\sum_{r=0}^{\infty} S_{2}(r) x^{r}
$$

it is easily verified that we get (1.9).
3. Proof of (1.10) and (1.6). Consider the array

| $a$ | $b$ | $r-a-b$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $c$ | $d$ | $r-c-d$ |
| $r-a-c$ | $r-b-d$ | $k$ |

If
$a+b+c+d=k+r$
then clearly all row and column sums of (3.1) equal r. It follows that
$\bar{H}(r ; 1,1,1,1)=H(r)$.
Let
(3.3)

$$
\mathrm{a}+\mathrm{d}+\mathrm{k}=\mathrm{t}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
2 r-2 a-b-c+d=s \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

It follows from (3.2) and (3.3) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{t}+\mathrm{r}=2 \mathrm{a}+\mathrm{b}+\mathrm{c}+2 \mathrm{~d} \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

In (1.9) take

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lambda_{1}=\mathrm{y}^{-2} \mathrm{z}^{2}, \quad \lambda_{2}=\lambda_{3}=\mathrm{y}^{-1} \mathrm{z}, \quad \lambda_{4}=\mathrm{yz}^{2} \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

and replace $x$ by $x^{2} z^{-1}$. The left member of (1.9) becomes

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} \bar{H}\left(r ; y^{-2} z^{2}, y^{-1} z, \quad y z^{2}\right)\left(x y^{2} z^{-1}\right)^{r} \\
& \quad=\sum_{r=0}^{\infty} x^{r} \sum_{\substack{a+b \leq r \\
c+d \leq r \\
a+c \leq r \\
a+b+c+d \geq r}} y^{2 r-2 a-b-c+d} z^{2 a+b+c+2 d-r} \\
& \quad=\sum_{r, s, t=0}^{\infty} H(r, s, t) x^{r} y^{s} z^{t}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $H(r, s, t)$ is the number of arrays (3.1) that satisfy (3.3) and (3.4). We have therefore the generating function

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{r, s, t=0}^{\infty} H(r, s, t) x^{r} y^{s} z^{t}=\frac{1-x^{3} y^{3} z^{3}}{(1-x y)^{2}(1-x z)^{2}\left(1-x y^{3} z\right)\left(1-x y z^{3}\right)} \tag{3.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

To obtain a generating function for $H(r, t)$, the number of arrays (3.1) that satisfy (3.3), we take $\mathrm{y}=1$. Thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{r, t=0}^{\infty} H(r, t) x^{r} z^{t}=\frac{1-x^{3} z^{3}}{(1-x)^{2}(1-x z)^{3}\left(1-x z^{3}\right)} \tag{3.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

We shall now show that (3.8) implies (1.6). Since

$$
(1-x)^{-2}\left(1-x z^{3}\right)^{-1}=\sum_{a, b=0}^{\infty}(a+1) x^{a+b} z^{3 b}
$$

it follows that the terms in which the exponents of $x$ and $z$ are equal contribute

$$
\sum_{b=0}^{\infty}(2 b+1) x^{3 b} z^{3 b}=\frac{1+x^{3} z^{3}}{\left(1-x^{3} z^{3}\right)^{2}}
$$

Therefore

$$
\sum_{r=0}^{\infty} H(r, r) x^{r}=\frac{1-x^{3}}{(1-x)^{3}} \frac{1+x^{3}}{\left(1-x^{3}\right)^{2}}=\frac{1+x^{3}}{(1-x)^{3}\left(1-x^{3}\right)}
$$

4. Proof of (1.12) and (1.7). Returning to (3.7), we shall now obtain a generating function for $H(r, t, t)$. We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& (1-x y)^{-2}(1-x z)^{-2}\left(1-x y^{3} z\right)^{-1}\left(1-x y z^{3}\right)^{-1} \\
& =\sum_{a, b, c, d=0}^{\infty}(a+1)(b+1) x^{a+b+c+d} y^{a+3 c+d} z^{b+c+3 d}
\end{aligned}
$$

For those terms in which $y$ and $z$ have equal exponents

$$
a+3 c+d=b+c+3 d
$$

so that

$$
a+2 c=b+2 d
$$

We accordingly get
$2 \sum_{c \leq d} \sum_{b}(b-2 c+2 d+1)(b+1) x^{2 b-c+3 d}(y z)^{b+c+3 d}-\sum_{a, c}(a+1)^{2} x^{2 a+2 c}(y z)^{a+4 c}$
$=2 \sum_{b, c, d}(b+2 d+1)(b+1) x^{2 b+2 c+d}(y z)^{b+4 c+3 d}-\sum_{a, c}(a+1)^{2} x^{2 a+2 c}(y z)^{a+4 c}$
$=\frac{2}{1-x^{2}(y z)^{4}} \sum_{b, d}(b+2 d+1)(b+1) x^{2 b+3 d}(y z)^{b+3 d}-\frac{1}{1-x^{2}(y z)^{4}} \sum_{a}(a+1)^{2} x^{2 a}(y z)^{a}$.

Carrying out the indicated summations, we get

$$
\frac{1}{1-x^{2}(y z)^{4}}\left\{\frac{2}{1-x^{3}(y z)^{3}} \frac{1+x^{2} y z}{\left(1-x^{2} y z\right)^{2}}+\frac{4(x y z)^{3}}{\left(1-x^{2} y z\right)\left(1-x^{3}\right)\left(y z^{3}\right)^{2}}-\frac{1+x^{2} y z}{\left(1-x^{2} y z\right)^{3}}\right\}
$$

which reduces to

$$
\frac{1+x^{2} y z+4 x^{3}(y z)^{3}-4 x^{5}(y z)^{4}-x^{6}(y z)^{6}-x^{8}(y z)^{7}}{\left(1-x^{2}(y z)^{4}\right)\left(1-x^{3}(y z)^{3}\right)^{2}\left(1-x^{2} y z\right)^{3}}
$$

It follows therefore that

$$
\sum_{r, t=0}^{\infty} H(r, t, t) x^{r} z^{t}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
=\frac{1+x^{2} z+4 x^{3} z^{3}-4 x^{5} z^{4}-x^{6} z^{6}-x^{8} z^{7}}{\left(1-x^{2} z^{4}\right)\left(1-x^{3} z^{3}\right)\left(1-x^{2} z\right)^{3}} \tag{4.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

To get a generating function for $H(r, r, r)$ we observe that the right member of (4.1) is equal to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\left(1+x^{2} z\right)\left(1+x^{3} z^{3}\right)}{\left(1-x^{2} z^{4}\right)\left(1-x^{2} z\right)^{3}}+\frac{4 x^{3} z^{3}}{\left(1-x^{2} z^{4}\right)\left(1-x^{3} z^{3}\right)\left(1-x^{2} z\right)^{2}} . \tag{4.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

The first fraction

$$
=\left(1+x^{3} z^{3}\right) \sum_{a, b}(a+1)^{2} x^{2 a+2 b} z^{a+4 b}
$$

which will contribute

$$
\left(1+x^{3} z^{3}\right) \sum_{b}(2 b+1)^{2}(x z)^{6 b}=\frac{\left(1+x^{3} z^{3}\right)\left(1+6 x^{6}+x^{12} z^{12}\right)}{\left(1-x^{6} z^{6}\right)^{3}}
$$

The second fraction in (4.2)

$$
=\frac{4 x^{3} z^{3}}{1-x^{3} z^{3}} \sum_{a, b}(a+1) x^{2 a+2 b} z^{a+4 b}
$$

which will contribute

$$
\frac{4 x^{3} z^{3}}{1-x^{3} z^{3}} \sum_{b}(2 b+1)(x z)^{6 b}=\frac{4 x^{3} z^{3}}{1-x^{3} z^{3}} \frac{1+x^{6} z^{6}}{\left(1-x^{6} z^{6}\right)^{2}}
$$

The total contribution is evidently

$$
\frac{\left(1+x^{3} z^{3}\right)^{4}}{\left(1-x^{3} z^{3}\right)\left(1-x^{6} z^{6}\right)^{2}}=\frac{\left(1+x^{3} z^{3}\right)^{2}}{\left(1-x^{3} z^{3}\right)^{3}}
$$

We have therefore

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{r=0}^{\infty} H(r, r, r) x^{r}=\frac{\left(1+x^{3}\right)^{2}}{\left(1-x^{3}\right)^{3}} \tag{4.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

As noted by MacMahon, Eq. (4.3) is equivalent to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{H}(3 \mathrm{~m}, 3 \mathrm{~m}, 3 \mathrm{~m})=\mathrm{m}^{2}+(\mathrm{m}+1)^{2} \tag{4.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

We shall now give a combinatorial proof of (4.4). With the notation (3.1) it is clear that $H(r, r, r)$ is equal to the number of solutions of the following system

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{c}
a+b+c+d=k+r  \tag{4.5}\\
k+a+d=r \\
2 a+b+c-d=r \\
a+b \leq r, c+d \leq r \\
a+c \leq r, b+d \leq r
\end{array}\right.
$$

It follows that $3 \mathrm{~d}=\mathrm{r}$. Thus, for $\mathrm{r}=3 \mathrm{~m}$, Eq. (4.5) reduces to

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{r}
2 \mathrm{a}+\mathrm{b}+\mathrm{c}=4 \mathrm{~m}  \tag{4.6}\\
\mathrm{a}+\mathrm{b} \leq 3 \mathrm{~m} \\
\mathrm{a}+\mathrm{c} \leq 3 \mathrm{~m} \\
\mathrm{~b} \leq 2 \mathrm{~m}, \quad \mathrm{c} \leq 2 \mathrm{~m}
\end{array} .\right.
$$

For $0 \leq a \leq m$, Eq. (4.6) implies

$$
b \geq 2 m-2 a, \quad c \geq 2 m-2 a
$$

Hence

$$
\begin{aligned}
H(3 m, 3 m, 3 m) & =\sum_{a=0}^{m-1} \sum_{2 m-2 a \leq b \leq 2 m} 1+\sum_{a=m}^{2 m} \sum_{b+c=4 m-2 a} 1 \\
& =\sum_{a=0}^{m-1}(2 a+1)+\sum_{a=m}^{2 m}(4 m-2 a+1) \\
& =m^{2}+\sum_{a=0}^{m}(2 a+1) \\
& =m^{2}+(m+1)^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

5. Proof of (1.14). Returning to (1.10) we replace $x$ by $x^{2}, y$ by $x^{-1} y$ and $z$ by $\mathrm{x}^{-1} \mathrm{z}$. If $\mathrm{K}(\mathrm{s}, \mathrm{t})$ is defined by (1.13) it is clear that

$$
\sum_{s, t=0}^{\infty} K(s, t) y^{s} z^{t}
$$

is equal to the sum of the terms in

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1-y^{3} z^{3}}{(1-x y)^{2}(1-x z)^{2}\left(1-x^{-2} y^{3} z\right)\left(1-x^{-2} y z^{3}\right)} \tag{5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

that are independent of x . Expanding (5.1), this sum is seen to be

$$
\left(1-y^{3} z^{3}\right) \sum(a+1)(b+1) y^{a+3 c+d_{z} b+c+3 d}
$$

where the summation is over all non-negative $a, b, c, d$ such that $a+b=2 c+2 d$. This gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(1-y^{3} z^{3}\right) \sum_{a, b=0}^{\infty}(2 a+1)(2 b+1) y^{2 a} z^{2 b}(y z)^{a+b} \sum_{c+d=a+b} y^{2 c} z^{2 d} \\
& \quad+\left(1-y^{3} z^{3}\right) \sum_{a, b=0}^{\infty}(2 a+2)(2 b+2) y^{2 a+1} z^{2 b+1}(y z)^{a+b+1} \sum_{c+d=a+b+1} y^{2 c} z^{2 d}
\end{aligned}
$$

Carrying out the indicated summations, we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{1-y^{3} z^{2}}{y^{2}-z^{2}}\left\{y^{2} \frac{1+y^{5} z}{\left(1-y^{5} z\right)^{2}} \frac{1+y^{3} z^{3}}{\left(1-y^{3} z^{3}\right)^{2}}-z^{2} \frac{1+y^{3} z^{3}}{\left(1-y^{3} z^{3}\right)^{2}} \frac{1+\mathrm{yz}^{5}}{\left(1-\mathrm{yz}^{5}\right)^{2}}\right. \\
\left.+4 y^{4} \frac{y^{2} z^{2}}{\left(1-y^{5} z\right)^{2}\left(1-y^{3} z^{3}\right)^{2}}-4 z^{4} \frac{y^{2} z^{2}}{\left(1-y^{3} z^{3}\right)^{2}\left(1-\mathrm{yz}^{5}\right)^{2}}\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

A little manipulation gives

$$
\frac{\left(1+\mathrm{y}^{3} \mathrm{z}^{3}\right)\left[1+4 \mathrm{y}^{3} \mathrm{z}^{3}+\mathrm{y}^{6} \mathrm{z}^{6}+4 \mathrm{y}^{2} \mathrm{z}^{2}\left(\mathrm{y}^{2}+\mathrm{z}^{2}\right)+\mathrm{yz}\left(\mathrm{y}^{4}+\mathrm{z}^{4}\right)\right]}{\left(1-\mathrm{y}^{5} \mathrm{z}\right)^{2}(1-\mathrm{yz})^{2}}
$$

This completes the proof of (1.14).
To show that (1.14) contains (1.7), we take

$$
\left(1-y^{5} z\right)^{-2}\left(1-y z^{5}\right)^{-2}=\sum_{a, b=0}^{\infty}(a+1)(b+1) y^{5 a+b} z^{a+5 b}
$$

Since

$$
\begin{aligned}
1+ & 4 y^{3} z^{3}+y^{6} z^{6}+4 y^{2} z^{2}\left(y^{2}+z^{2}\right)+y z\left(y^{4}+z^{4}\right) \\
& =2\left(1+y^{3} z^{3}\right)^{2}-\left(1-y^{5} z\right)\left(1-y z^{5}\right)+4 y^{2} z^{2}\left(y^{2}+z^{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

it follows that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{s=0}^{\infty} H(s, s, s) z^{s} & =\sum_{s=0}^{\infty} K(s, s) z^{s} \\
& =2\left(1+z^{3}\right)^{3} \sum_{a=0}^{\infty}(a+1)^{2} z^{6 a}-\left(1+z^{3}\right) \sum_{a=0}^{\infty} z^{6 a} \\
& =2\left(1+z^{3}\right)^{3} \frac{1+z^{6}}{\left(1-z^{6}\right)^{3}}-\frac{1+z^{3}}{1-z^{6}} \\
& =\frac{2\left(1+z^{6}\right)}{\left(1-z^{3}\right)^{3}}-\frac{1}{1-z^{3}}=\frac{\left(1+z^{3}\right)^{2}}{\left(1-z^{3}\right)^{3}}
\end{aligned}
$$

## REFERENCES

1. H. Anand, V. C. Dumir, and H. Gupta, "A Combinatorial Distribution Problem," Duke Mathematical Journal, Vol. 33 (1966), pp. 757-769.
2. P. A. MacMahon, Combinatory Analysis, Vol. 2, Cambridge, 1916.

# REPRESENTATIONS FOR A SPECIAL SEQUENCE 

L. CARLITZ ${ }^{\star}$ and RICHARD SCOVILLE<br>Duke University, Durham, North Carolina and

VERNER E. HOGGATT, JR.
San Jose State University, San Jose, California

## 1. INTRODUCTION AND SUMMARY

Consider the sequence defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
u_{0}=0, \quad u_{1}=1, \quad u_{n+1}=u_{n}+2 u_{n-1} \quad(n \geq 1) \tag{1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

It follows at once from (1.1) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
u_{n}=\frac{1}{3}\left(2^{n}-(-1)^{n}\right), \quad u_{n}+u_{n+1}=2^{n} \tag{1.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

The first few values of $u_{n}$ are easily computed.

| n | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $u_{\mathrm{n}}$ | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 11 | 21 | 43 | 85 | 171 | 341 |

It is not difficult to show that the sums

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i=2}^{k} \epsilon_{i} u_{i} \quad(k=2,3,4, \cdots), \tag{1.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where each $\epsilon_{i}=0$ or 1 , are distinct. The first few numbers in (1.3) are

$$
1,3,4,5,6,8,9,11,12,14,15,16,17,19,20, \cdots .
$$

Thus there is a sequence of "missing" numbers beginning with

$$
\begin{equation*}
2,7,10,13,18,23,28,31,34,39, \cdots \tag{1.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

In order to identify the sequence (1.4) we first define an array of positive integers $R$ in the following way. The elements of the first row are denoted by $a(n)$, of the second row by $b(n)$, of the third row by $c(n)$. Put

[^1]$$
\mathrm{a}(1)=1, \quad \mathrm{~b}(1)=3, \quad \mathrm{c}(1)=2 .
$$

Assume that the first $n-1$ columns of $R$ have been filled. Then $a(n)$ is the smallest integer not already appearing, while
(1.5)
$b(n)=a(n)+2 n$
and
(1.6)

$$
c(n)=b(n)-1 .
$$

The sets $\{a(n)\},\{b(n)\},\{c(n)\}$ constitute a disjoint partition of the positive integers. The following table is readily constructed.

| n | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
| ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| a | 1 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 9 | 12 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 20 | 21 | 22 |
| b | 3 | 8 | 11 | 14 | 19 | 24 | 29 | 32 | 35 | 40 | 43 | 48 |
| c | 2 | 7 | 10 | 13 | 18 | 23 | 28 | 31 | 34 | 39 | 42 | 47 |

The table suggests that the numbers $c(n)$ are the "missing" numbers (1.4) and we shall prove that this is indeed the case.

Let $A_{k}$ Denote the set of numbers

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{u}_{\mathrm{k}_{1}}+\mathrm{u}_{\mathrm{k}_{2}}+\cdots+\mathrm{u}_{\mathrm{k}_{\mathrm{r}}},  \tag{1.7}\\
2 \leq \mathrm{k}=\mathrm{k}_{1}<\mathrm{k}_{2}<\cdots<\mathrm{k}_{\mathrm{r}}
\end{array}\right.
$$

and $r=1,2,3, \cdots$. We shall show that

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{2 k+2}=a b^{k} a(\underset{\sim}{N}) \cup a b^{k} c(\underset{\sim}{N}) \quad(k \geq 0) \tag{1.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{2 k+1}=b^{k} a(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}}) \cup b^{k} c(\underset{\sim}{N}) \quad(k \geq 1) \tag{1.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

where N denotes the set of positive integers.
If N is given by (1.7), we define
(1.10)

Then we shall show that (1.11)

$$
\begin{gathered}
e(N)=u_{k_{r}-1}+u_{k_{r}-1}+\cdots+u_{k_{r}-1} \cdot \\
e(a(n))=n
\end{gathered}
$$

and
(1.12)

$$
e(b(n))=a(n)
$$

Clearly the domain of the function $c(n)$ is restricted to $a(\underset{\sim}{N}) \cup b(\underset{\sim}{N})$. However, since, as we shall see below, $(b(n)-2) \in a(\underset{\sim}{N})$ and
(1.13)

$$
\begin{gather*}
e(b(n)-2)=a(n) \\
e(c(n))=a(n) \tag{1.14}
\end{gather*}
$$

it is natural to define

Then $e(n)$ is defined for all $n$ and we show that $e(n)$ is monotone.
The functions $a, b, c$ satisfy various relations. In particular we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{a}^{2}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{n})-2=\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})+2 \mathrm{n}-2 \\
& \mathrm{ab}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{ba}(\mathrm{n})+2=2 \mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})+\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{n}) \\
& \mathrm{ac}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{ca}(\mathrm{n})+2=2 \mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})+\mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n}) \\
& \mathrm{cb}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{bc}(\mathrm{n})+2=2 \mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})+3 \mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n})+2 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Moreover if we define

$$
\begin{equation*}
d(n)=a(n)+n \tag{1.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

then we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{da}(\mathrm{n}) & =2 \mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{n})-2 \\
\mathrm{db}(\mathrm{n}) & =4 \mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{n}) \\
\mathrm{dc}(\mathrm{n}) & =4 \mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{n})-2 .
\end{aligned}
$$

It follows from (1.11) and (1.12) that every positive integer N can be written in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
N=u_{k_{1}}+u_{k_{2}}+\cdots+u_{k_{\mathrm{k}}} \tag{1.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

where now

$$
1 \leq \mathrm{k}_{1}<\mathrm{k}_{2}<\cdots<\mathrm{k}_{\mathrm{r}}
$$

Hence N is a "missing" number if and only if $\mathrm{k}_{1}=1, \mathrm{k}_{2}=2$.
The representation (1.16) is in general not unique. The numbers $a(n)$ are exactly those for which, in the representation (1.7), $k_{1}$ is even. Hence in (1.66) if we assume that $k_{1}$ is odd, the representation (1.16) is unique. We accordingly call this the canonical representation of N .

Returning to (1.15), we define the complementaryfunction $d^{\prime}(n)$ so that the sets $\{d(n)\}$, $\left\{d^{\prime}(n)\right\}$ constitute a disjoint partition of the positive integers. We shall show that
$d(n)=2 d^{\prime}(n)$.

| n | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| $\mathrm{~d}^{\mathrm{d}}$ | 1 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 7 | 9 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 23 |
| d | 2 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 14 | 18 | 22 | 24 | 26 | 30 | 32 | 34 | 38 | 40 | 42 | 46 |

Let $\delta(\mathrm{n})$ denote the number of $\mathrm{d}^{(\mathrm{k})} \leq \mathrm{n}$ and let $\delta^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})$ denote the number of $\mathrm{d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{k}) \leq \mathrm{n}$. We show that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \delta(N)=\left[\frac{N}{2}\right]-\left[\frac{N}{4}\right]+\left[\frac{N}{8}\right]-\cdots \\
& \delta^{\prime}(N)=[N]-\left[\frac{N}{2}\right]+\left[\frac{N}{4}\right]-\cdots
\end{aligned}
$$

Finally, if N has the canonical representation (1.16) we define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{~N})=\sum_{\mathrm{i}=1}^{\mathrm{r}}(-1)^{\mathrm{k}_{\mathrm{i}}} \tag{1.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

It follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~N})=2 \mathrm{~N}+\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{~N}) \tag{1.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
d(N)=a(N)+N=\sum_{i=1}^{r} 2^{k_{i}} \tag{1.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

so that there is a close connection with the binary representation of an integer.
Even though there is no "natural" irrationality associated with the sequence $\left\{u_{n}\right\}$, it is evident from the above summary that many of the results of the previous papers of this series $[2,3,4,5,6]$ have their counterpart in the present situation.

The material in the final two sections of the paper is not included in the above summary.

## 2. THE CANONICAL REPRESENTATION

As in the Introduction, we define the sequence $\left\{u_{n}\right\}$ by means of

$$
u_{0}=0, \quad u_{1}=1, \quad u_{n+1}=u_{n}+2 u_{n-1} \quad(n \geq 1)
$$

We first prove the following.
Theorem 2.1. Every positive integer N can be written uniquely in the form

$$
N=\epsilon_{1} u_{1}+\epsilon_{2} u_{2}+\cdots,
$$

where the $\epsilon_{i}=0$ or 1 and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\epsilon_{1}=\cdots=\epsilon_{\mathrm{k}-1}=0, \quad \epsilon_{\mathrm{k}}=1 \Rightarrow \mathrm{k} \text { odd } . \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. The theorem can be easily proved by induction on $n$ as follows. Let $C_{2 n}$ consist of all sequences

$$
\left(\epsilon_{1}, \epsilon_{2}, \cdots, \epsilon_{2 n}\right) \quad\left(\epsilon_{i}=0 \text { or } 1\right)
$$

satisfying (2.2). Then the map

$$
\left(\epsilon_{1}, \epsilon_{2}, \cdots, \epsilon_{2 n}\right) \rightarrow \epsilon_{1} u_{1}+\epsilon_{2} u_{2}+\cdots+\epsilon_{2 n} u_{2 n}
$$

is $1-1$ and onto from $C_{2 n}$ to $\left[0, \cdots, u_{2 n+1}-1\right]$. Clearly $C_{2} \longrightarrow[0,1]$. Assuming that

$$
\mathrm{C}_{2 \mathrm{n}} \rightarrow\left[0, \cdots, u_{2 n+1}-1\right]
$$

we see that

$$
\begin{aligned}
C_{2 n+2} & \rightarrow\left[0, \cdots, u_{2 n+1}-1\right] \quad\left[u_{2 n+1}, \cdots, 2 u_{2 n+1}-1\right] \\
& \cup\left[u_{2 n+2}+1, \cdots, u_{2 n+1}+u_{2 n+2}-1\right] \\
& \cup\left[u_{2 n+1}+u_{2 n+2}, \cdots, 2 u_{2 n+1}+u_{2 n+2}-1\right] \\
& =\left[0, \cdots, u_{2 n+3}-1\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

since

$$
2 u_{2 n+1}-1=u_{2 n+2}
$$

If (2.2) is satisfied we call (2.1) the canonical representation of $N$.
In view of the above we have also
Theorem 2.2. If $N$ and $M$ are given canonically by

$$
N=\sum \epsilon_{i} u_{i}, \quad M=\sum \delta_{i} u_{i}
$$

then

$$
\begin{equation*}
N \leq M \text { if and only if } \sum \epsilon_{i} 2^{i} \leq \sum \delta_{i} 2^{i} \tag{2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let N be given by (2.1) and define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi(\mathrm{N})=\sum \epsilon_{\mathrm{i}} 2^{\mathrm{i}} \tag{2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that since

$$
\begin{equation*}
u_{n}=\frac{1}{3}\left(2^{n}-(-1)^{n}\right) \tag{2.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
N=\frac{1}{3}(\phi(N)-f(N)) \tag{2.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{~N})=\epsilon(-1)^{\mathrm{i}} \epsilon_{\mathrm{i}} . \tag{2.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Theorem 2.3. There are exactly $N$ numbers of the form $2^{k} K, k, K$ odd, less than or equal to $\phi(\mathrm{N})$.

Proof. The N numbers of the stated form are simply

$$
\phi(1), \phi(2), \cdots, \phi(\mathrm{N}) .
$$

If N is given canonically by

$$
N=\epsilon_{1} u_{1}+\epsilon_{2} u_{2}+\cdots
$$

we define
(2.8)

$$
a(n)=\epsilon_{1} u_{2}+\epsilon_{3} u_{3}+\cdots
$$

This is of course never canonical. Define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~N})+2 \mathrm{~N}=\epsilon_{1} \mathrm{u}_{3}+\epsilon_{1} \mathrm{u}_{4}+\cdots \tag{2.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

The representation (2.9) is canonical.
Suppose $\epsilon_{2 k+1}$ is the first nonzero $\epsilon_{i}$ in the canonical representation of $N$. Then, since

$$
u_{1}+u_{2}+\cdots+u_{2 k+1}=u_{2 k+2},
$$

we see that $a(N)$ is given canonically by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{u}_{1}+\mathrm{u}_{2}+\cdots+\mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+1}+0 \cdot \mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+2}+\epsilon_{2 \mathrm{k}+2} \mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+3}+\cdots \tag{2.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $c(N)=b(N)-1$. Then, since

$$
\mathrm{u}_{1}+\mathrm{u}_{2}+\cdots+\mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+2}=\mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+3}-1
$$

$c(N)$ is given canonically by
(2.11)

$$
\mathrm{c}(\mathrm{~N})=\mathrm{u}_{1}+\mathrm{u}_{2}+\cdots+\mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+2}+0 \cdot \mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+3}+\epsilon_{2 \mathrm{k}+2} \mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+4}+\cdots
$$

We now state
Theorem 2.4. The three functions $a, b, c$ defined above are strictly monotone and their ranges $a(\mathbb{N}), b(\mathbb{N}), c(\mathbb{N})$ form a disjoint partition of $N$.

Proof. We have
(2.12)

$$
\phi(\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~N})+1)=2 \phi(\mathrm{~N})+2
$$

and
(2.13)

$$
\phi(\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{~N}))=4 \phi(\mathrm{~N})
$$

Since $\phi$ is 1-1 and monotone, it follows that $a, b$, $c$ are monotone. By (2.10), $a(\underset{\sim}{N})$ consists of those $N$ whose canonical representations begin with an odd number of 1's; $b(\underset{\sim}{N})$ of those which begin with 0 ; and $c(\mathbb{N})$ of those which begin with an even number of 1 's. Hence all numbers are accounted for.

It is now clear that the functions $a, b, c$ defined above coincide with the $a, b, c$ defined in the Introduction.

The following two theorems are easy corollaries of the above.

Theorem 2.5. $c(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}})$ is the set of integers that cannot be written as a sum of distinct $u_{i}$ with $i \geq 2$.

Thus the $c(\underset{\sim}{N})$ are the "missing" numbers of the Introduction.
Theorem 2.6. If $K \nsubseteq c(\underset{\sim}{N})$, then $K$ can be written uniquely as a sum of distinct $u_{i}$ with $\mathrm{i} \geq 2$.

## 3. RELATIONS INVOLVING $a, b$, AND $c$

We now define

$$
\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{~N})=\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~N})+\mathrm{N} .
$$

Since

$$
u_{k}+u_{k+1}=2^{k}
$$

it follows at once from (2.4) and (2.8) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{~N})=\phi(\mathrm{N}) \tag{3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Hence, by (2.6), we may write

$$
\begin{equation*}
2 \mathrm{~N}=\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~N})-\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{~N}) \tag{3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $d^{\prime}$ denote the monotone function whose range is the complement of the range of $d$. Since the range of $\phi$ (that is, of $d$ ) consists of the numbers $2^{k} K$, with $k, K$ both odd, it follows that the range of $d^{\prime}$ consists of the numbers $2^{k} K$ with $k$ even and $K$ odd. We have therefore
(3.3) $\quad \mathrm{d}(\mathrm{N})=2 \mathrm{~d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{N})$.

Thus (2.12) and (2.13) become
(3.4)

$$
d(a+1)=2 d+2
$$

and
(3.5) $\quad d b=4 d$,
respectively.
From (2.10) we obtain
(3.6)

$$
\mathrm{da}=2 \mathrm{~d}-2
$$

and
(3.7)

$$
d^{\prime} a=d-1
$$

Theorem 3.1. We have
(3.11)
$a^{2}(N)=b(N)-2=a(N)+2 N-2$
$a b(N)=b a(N)+2=2 a(N)+b(N)$
$a c(N)=c a(N)+2=2 a(N)+c(N)$
$\mathrm{cb}(\mathrm{N})=\mathrm{bc}(\mathrm{N})+2=2 \mathrm{a}(\mathrm{N})+3 \mathrm{c}(\mathrm{N})$
(3.12)
$\mathrm{da}(\mathrm{N})=2 \mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{~N})-2$
$\mathrm{db}(\mathrm{N})=4 \mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{~N})$
$\mathrm{dc}(\mathrm{N})=4 \mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{~N})-2$.

Proof. The first four formulas follow from the definitions. For example if

$$
\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+1}+\epsilon_{2 \mathrm{k}+2} \mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+2}+\cdots,
$$

then

$$
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~N})=1 \cdot \mathrm{u}_{1}+1 \cdot \mathrm{u}_{2}+\cdots+1 \cdot \mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+1}+\epsilon_{2 \mathrm{k}+2} \mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+3}+\cdots
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{a}^{2}(\mathrm{~N}) & =1 \cdot \mathrm{u}_{2}+\cdots+1 \cdot \mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+2}+\epsilon_{2 \mathrm{k}+2} u_{2 \mathrm{k}+4}+\cdots \\
& =u_{2 \mathrm{k}+3}-2+\epsilon_{2 \mathrm{k}+2} u_{2 \mathrm{k}+4}+\cdots \\
& =\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{~N})-2
\end{aligned}
$$

Formula (3.12) is the same as (3.6) while (3.13) and (3.14) follow from the formulas for $a b$ and ac.

In view of Theorem 2.6, every

```
N}\ina(\mathbb{N})\cupb(N
```

can be written uniquely in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{N}=\delta_{2} \mathrm{u}_{2}+\delta_{3} \mathrm{u}_{3}+\cdots \tag{3.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $\delta_{2}=0,1$. We define $A_{k}$ as the set of $N$ for which $\delta_{k}$ is the first nonzero $\delta_{i}$. Theorem 3.2. We have

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
A_{2 k+2}=a b^{k} a(\underset{\sim}{N}) \cup a b^{k} c(\underset{\sim}{N}) & (k \geq 0) \\
A_{2 k+1}=b^{k} a(\underset{\sim}{N}) \cup b^{k} c(\underset{\sim}{N}) & (k \geq 1) \tag{3.17}
\end{array}
$$

Proof. By (2.9), (2.10) and (2.11), the union

$$
a(\mathbb{N}) \cup c(\mathbb{N})
$$

consists of those K for which

$$
\epsilon_{1}=\epsilon_{1}(K)=1
$$

Hence, applying a, we have

$$
\mathrm{A}_{2}=\mathrm{a}^{2}(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}}) \cup \mathrm{ac}(\mathbb{N})
$$

and, applying $b$,

$$
\mathrm{A}_{3}=\mathrm{ba}(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}}) \cup \mathrm{bc}(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}}) .
$$

Continuing in this way, it is clear that we obtain the stated results.
Theorem 3.2 admits of the following refinement.
Theorem 3.3. We have

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{ab}^{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{a}(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}})=\left\{\mathrm{N} \in \mathrm{~A}_{2 \mathrm{k}+2} \mid \mathrm{N}=\mathrm{ab}^{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n}) \equiv \mathrm{n}(\bmod 2)\right\}  \tag{3.17}\\
& \mathrm{ab}^{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{c}(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}})=\left\{\mathrm{N} \in \mathrm{~A}_{2 \mathrm{k}+2} \mid \mathrm{N}=\mathrm{ab}^{\mathrm{k}} \mathbf{c}(\mathrm{n}) \equiv \mathrm{n}+1(\bmod 2)\right\}  \tag{3.18}\\
& \mathrm{b}^{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{a}(\underset{\sim}{\mathrm{~N}})=\left\{\mathrm{N} \in \mathrm{~A}_{2 \mathrm{k}+1} \mid \mathrm{N}=\mathrm{b}^{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n}) \equiv \mathrm{n}(\bmod 2)\right\} \tag{3.19}
\end{align*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{b}^{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{c}(\underset{\sim}{\mathrm{~N}})=\left\{\mathrm{N} \in \mathrm{~A}_{2 \mathrm{k}+1} \mid \mathrm{N}=\mathrm{b}^{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n}) \equiv \mathrm{n}+1(\bmod 2)\right\} \tag{3.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. The theorem follows from Theorem 3.2 together with the observation

$$
\begin{equation*}
a(n) \equiv b(n) \equiv n, \quad c(n) \equiv n+1(\bmod 2) \tag{3.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let

$$
N \in a(\mathbb{N}) \cup b(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}})
$$

so that (3.15) is satisfied. We define

$$
\begin{equation*}
e(N)=\delta_{2} u_{1}+\delta_{3} u_{2}+\cdots \tag{3.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then from the definition of $a$ and $b$ we see that
(3.22)

$$
e(a(n))=n
$$

and
(3.23)

$$
e(b(n))=a(n)
$$

Since

$$
a^{2}(n)=b(n)-2<c(n)<b(n),
$$

we define
(3.24)

$$
e(c(n))=a(n)
$$

Thus $e(n)$ is now defined for all $n$.

| n | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 |
| ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| e | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 5 | 5 | 5 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 9 | 9 | 10 |
| n | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 | 32 | 33 | 34 | 35 | 36 | 37 | 38 | 39 | 40 |
| e | 11 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 15 | 15 | 16 | 16 | 16 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 20 | 20 |

Theorem 3.4. The function $e$ is monotone. Indeed $e(n)=e(n-1)$ if and only if

$$
\mathrm{n} \in \mathrm{~b}(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}}) \cup \mathrm{c}(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}})
$$

Otherwise $(\mathrm{n} \in \mathrm{a}(\underset{\sim}{\mathrm{N}})$ )

$$
e(n)=e(n-1)+1
$$

Proof. We have already seen that

$$
e \mathrm{~b}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{ec}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{ec}(\mathrm{n})-1=\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})
$$

Thus it remains to show that

$$
\begin{equation*}
e(a(n))=e(a(n)-1)+1 \tag{3.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let

$$
\mathrm{n}=\mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+1}+\epsilon_{2 \mathrm{k}+2} \mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+2}+\cdots
$$

be the canonical representation of $n$. Then

$$
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+2}+\epsilon_{2 \mathrm{k}+2} \mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+3}+\cdots
$$

Since

$$
u_{2 k+2}-1=u_{2}+u_{3}+u_{4}+\cdots+u_{2 k+1}
$$

we get

$$
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})-1=\mathrm{u}_{2}+\mathrm{u}_{3}+\cdots+\mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+1}+\epsilon_{2 \mathrm{k}+2} \mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+3}+\cdots
$$

It follows that

$$
\begin{aligned}
e(a(n)-1) & =u_{1}+u_{2}+\cdots+u_{2 k}+\epsilon_{2 k+2} u_{2 k+2}+\cdots \\
& =\left(u_{2 k+1}-1\right)+\epsilon_{2 k+2} u_{2 k+2}+\cdots \\
& =n-1
\end{aligned}
$$

This evidently proves (3.25).
Theorem 3.5. We have

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
a(n+1)=a(n)+3  \tag{3.26}\\
a(n+1)=a(n)+1
\end{array} \quad(n \in a(\mathbb{N}))\right.
$$

Proof. Formula (3.4) is evidently equivalent to

$$
\begin{equation*}
a(a(n)+1)=b(n)+1 \tag{3.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

By (3.8)

$$
a^{2}(n)=b(n)-2=c(n)-1
$$

so that we have the sequence of consecutive integers

$$
\begin{equation*}
a^{2}(n), \quad c(n), \quad b(n), \quad a \quad a(n)+1 . \tag{3.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

On the other hand, by (3.9) and (3.10)

$$
a b(n)=a c(n)+1
$$

Finally, since

$$
b(n)+1 \in a(n)
$$

we have, by (3.28),

$$
\begin{aligned}
a(b(n)+1) & =a^{2}(a(n)+1)=b a(n)+1-2 \\
& =a(a(n)+1)+2 a(n) \\
& =2 a(n)+b(n)+1 \\
& =a b(n)+1
\end{aligned}
$$

This completes the proof of the theorem.
If we let $\alpha(\mathrm{n})$ denote the number of $\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{k})<\mathrm{n}$, it follows at once from Theorem 3.5 that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{n}+2 \alpha(\mathrm{n}) \quad(\mathrm{n} \geq 1) \tag{3.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is equivalent to

$$
\mathrm{d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{n}+\alpha(\mathrm{n})
$$

We shall now show that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha(\mathrm{n}+1)=\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{n}) \tag{3.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $n \in a(\underset{\sim}{N}) \cup b(\underset{\sim}{N})$. Then

$$
\mathrm{n}=\mathrm{u}_{\mathrm{k}}=\epsilon_{\mathrm{k}+1} \mathrm{u}_{\mathrm{k}+1}+\cdots \quad(\mathrm{k} \geq 2)
$$

and

$$
\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{u}_{\mathrm{k}-1}+\epsilon_{\mathrm{k}+1} \mathrm{u}_{\mathrm{k}}+\cdots
$$

Also

$$
\mathrm{n}+1=\mathrm{u}_{1}+\mathrm{u}_{\mathrm{k}}+\epsilon_{\mathrm{k}+1} \mathrm{u}_{\mathrm{k}+1}+\cdots \quad \text { (canonical) }
$$

so that

$$
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n}+1)=\mathrm{u}_{2}+\mathrm{u}_{\mathrm{k}+1}+\epsilon_{\mathrm{k}+1} \mathrm{u}_{\mathrm{k}+2}+\cdots
$$

It follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n}+1)-2 \mathrm{e}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{n}+1 \quad(\mathrm{n} \notin \mathrm{c}(\mathbb{N})) \tag{3.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $n \in c(\underset{\sim}{N})$ we have $e(n)=e(n+1)$. Since $n+1 \in b(\mathbb{N})$, we may use (3.32). Thus

$$
2 e(n)=2 e(n+1)=a(n+2)-(n+2)=a(n+1)-(n+1)
$$

by (3.26). Hence

$$
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n}+1)-2 \mathrm{e}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{n}+1
$$

for all n . This is evidently equivalent to (3.31).
This proves
Theorem 3.6. The number of $\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{k}) \leq \mathrm{n}$ is equal to $\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{n})$. Moreover

$$
\begin{equation*}
a(n)=n+2 e(n-1) \quad(n>1) \tag{3.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

A few special values of $a(n)$ may be noted:

$$
\begin{array}{cc}
\mathrm{a}\left(2^{2 \mathrm{k}-1}\right)=2^{2 \mathrm{k}} & (\mathrm{k} \geq 1) \\
\mathrm{a}\left(2^{2 \mathrm{k}}\right)=2^{2 \mathrm{k}+1}-2 & (\mathrm{k} \geq 1) \\
\mathrm{a}\left(2^{2 \mathrm{k}-1}-2\right)=2^{2 \mathrm{k}}-4 & (\mathrm{k}>1) \\
\mathrm{a}\left(2^{2 \mathrm{k}}-2\right)=2^{2 \mathrm{k}+1}-6 & (\mathrm{k}>2) .
\end{array}
$$

## 4. COMPARISON WITH THE BINARY REPRESENTATION

If N is given in its binary representation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{N}=\gamma_{0}+\gamma_{1} \cdot 2+\gamma_{2} \cdot 2^{2}+\cdots \tag{4.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\gamma_{1}=0$ or 1 , we define

$$
\delta(\mathrm{N})=\gamma_{0} u_{0}+\gamma_{1} u_{1}+\gamma_{2} u_{2}+\cdots
$$

and
(4.3)

$$
(N)=\sum_{i} \gamma_{i}(-1)^{\mathrm{i}}
$$

Then we have

$$
\delta(\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{~N}))=\mathrm{N}
$$

and
(4.5)

$$
\chi(\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{~N}))=\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{~N})
$$

A simple computation leads to
(4.6) $\delta(N)=\left[\frac{N}{2}\right]-\left[\frac{N}{4}\right]+\left[\frac{N}{8}\right]-\cdots$.

Let
(4.7)

$$
\delta^{\prime}(\mathrm{N})=\mathrm{N}-\left[\frac{\mathrm{N}}{2}\right]+\left[\frac{\mathrm{N}}{4}\right]-\cdots
$$

so that
(4.8)

$$
\delta(\mathrm{N})+\delta \mathrm{r}(\mathrm{~N})=\mathrm{N} .
$$

Theorem 4.1. The number of $d(k) \leq n$ is equal to $\delta(N)$. The number of $d^{\prime}(k) \leq n$ is equal to $\delta(\mathrm{N})$.

Proof. Since $\delta$ is monotone, we have $d(k) \leq n$ if and only if

$$
\mathrm{k}=\delta \mathrm{d}(\mathrm{k}) \quad \leq \delta(\mathrm{n})
$$

Hence, in view of (4.8), the theorem is proved.
We have seen in Section 3 that if N has the canonical representation

$$
N=\epsilon_{1} u_{1}+\epsilon_{2} u_{2}+\cdots
$$

then
(4.9)

$$
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~N})-2 \mathrm{~N}=\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{~N})
$$

where

$$
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{~N})=\sum_{\mathrm{i}}(-1)^{\mathrm{i}} \epsilon_{\mathrm{i}} .
$$

It follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{d}(\mathrm{~N})=\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~N})+\mathrm{N}=\sum_{\mathrm{i}} \epsilon_{\mathrm{i}} \cdot 2^{\mathrm{i}} \tag{4.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Replacing $N$ by $d(N), d^{\prime}(N)$ in (4.9), we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{~N}))-2 \mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{~N})=\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{~N})) \tag{4.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

and
(4.12)

$$
\mathrm{a}\left(\mathrm{~d}^{\mathrm{r}}(\mathrm{~N})\right)-2 \mathrm{~d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{N})=\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{~N}))
$$

Theorem 4.2. The function $f(d)$ takes on every even value (positive, negative or zero) infinitely often. The function $f\left(d^{\prime}\right)$ takes on every odd value (positive or negative) infinitely often.

Proof. Consider the number

Clearly

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{N} & =\mathrm{u}_{1}+\mathrm{u}_{3}+\mathrm{u}_{5}+\cdots+\mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}-1} \\
& =\frac{1}{3}\left(2^{1}+1\right)+\frac{1}{3}\left(2^{3}+1\right)+\cdots+\frac{1}{3}\left(2^{2 \mathrm{k}-1}+1\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{2}{3}\left(2^{2 \mathrm{k}}-1\right)+\mathrm{k}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

(4.13)

$$
N \equiv 2(\bmod 4)
$$

if and only if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{k} \equiv 0(\bmod 4) \tag{4.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

It follows from (4.13) that $N \in d(\underset{\sim}{N})$. Also it is evident that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{~N})=-\mathrm{k}, \quad \mathrm{k} \equiv 0(\bmod 4) \tag{4.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the next place the number

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{N} & =\mathrm{u}_{3}+\mathrm{u}_{5}+\cdots+\mathrm{u}_{2 \mathrm{k}+1} \\
& =\frac{1}{3}\left(2^{3}+1\right)+\frac{1}{3}\left(2^{5}+1\right)+\cdots+\frac{1}{3}\left(2^{2 \mathrm{k}+1}+1\right) \\
& \equiv 3 \mathrm{k} \quad(\bmod 8) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence for $k \equiv 2(\bmod 4)$, we have $N \equiv 2(\bmod 4)$ and so as above $N \in d(\mathbb{N})$. Also it is evident that (4.15) holds in this case also.

Now consider

$$
\begin{aligned}
N & =u_{1}+u_{2}+u_{4}+u_{6}+\cdots+u_{2 k} \\
& =1+\frac{1}{3}\left(2^{2}-1\right)+\frac{1}{3}\left(2^{4}-1\right)+\cdots+\frac{1}{3}\left(2^{2 \mathrm{k}}-1\right) \\
& \equiv 1+\mathrm{k} \quad(\bmod 4) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus for k odd, $\mathrm{N} \in \mathrm{d}(\underset{\sim}{\mathrm{N}})$. Also it is clear that

$$
f(N)=k-1 .
$$

This evidently proves the first half of the theorem.
To form the second half of the theorem we first take

$$
N=u_{1}+u_{3}+u_{5}+\cdots+u_{2 k-1}
$$

Then

$$
\mathrm{N} \equiv \mathrm{k} \quad(\bmod 2)
$$

Thus for $k$ odd, $N \in d^{\prime}(\underset{\sim}{N})$. Moreover

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{~N})=-\mathrm{k} \tag{4.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Next for

$$
N=u_{1}+u_{2}+u_{4}+u_{6}+\cdots+u_{2 k}+u_{2 k+2}
$$

we again have

$$
N \equiv k \quad(\bmod 2)
$$

so that $N \in d^{\prime}(\underset{\sim}{N})$ for $k$ odd. Clearly

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{~N})=\mathrm{k} \tag{4.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

This completes the proof of the theorem.
As an immediate corollary of Theorem 4.2 we have
Theorem 4.3. The commutator

$$
\operatorname{ad}(\mathrm{N})-\mathrm{da}(\mathrm{~N})=\mathrm{fd}(\mathrm{~N})+2
$$

takes on every even value infinitely often. Also the commutator

$$
\operatorname{ad}^{\prime}(\mathrm{N})-\mathrm{d}^{\prime} \mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~N})=\mathrm{fd}^{\prime}(\mathrm{N})+1
$$

takes on every even value infinitely often.

## 5. WORDS

By a word function, or briefly, word, is meant a function of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
w=a^{\alpha} b^{\beta} c^{\gamma} a^{\alpha^{\prime}} b^{\beta^{\prime}} c^{\gamma^{\prime}} \ldots, \tag{5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the exponents are arbitrary non-negative integers.
Theorem 5.1. Every word function $w(n)$ can be linearized, that is

$$
\begin{equation*}
w(n)=A_{w} a(n)+B_{w} n-C_{w} \quad\left(A_{w}>0\right) \tag{5.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $A_{w}, B_{w}, C_{w}$ are independent of $n$. Moreover the representation (5.2) is unique.
Proof. The representation (5.2) follows from the relations

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
a^{2}(n)=a(n)+2 n-2  \tag{5.3}\\
a b(n)=2 a(n)+b(n)=3 a(n)+2 n \\
a c(n)=2 a(n)+c(n)=3 a(n)+2 n-1
\end{array}\right.
$$

If we assume a second representation (5.2) it follows that $a(n)$ is a linear function of n. This evidently contradicts Theorem 3.5.

Theorem 5.2. For any word $w$, the coefficient $B_{w}$ in (5.2) is even. Hence the function d is not a word.

Proof. Repeated application of (5.3).
Remark. If we had defined words as the set of functions of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
a^{\alpha} b^{\beta} c^{\gamma} d^{\delta} \cdots, \tag{5.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

then, in view of Theorem 4.3, we would not be able to assert the extended form of Theorem 5.1.

Combining (5.3) with (5.2), we get the following recurrences for the coefficients $A_{w}$, $\mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{w}}, \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{w}}$ :

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
A_{w a}=A_{w}+B_{w}  \tag{5.5}\\
B_{w a}=2 A_{w} \\
C_{w a}=2 A_{w}+C_{w}
\end{array}\right.
$$

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
A_{w b}=3 A_{w}+B_{w}  \tag{5.6}\\
B_{w b}=2 A_{w}+2 B_{w} \\
C_{w b}=C_{w}
\end{array}\right.
$$

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
A_{w c}=3 A_{w}+B_{w} \\
B_{w c}=2 A_{w}+2 B_{w} \\
C_{w c}=A_{w}+B_{w}+C_{w} .
\end{array}\right.
$$

In particular we find that

$$
\begin{gather*}
a^{k}(n)=u_{k} a(n)+2 u_{k-1} n-\left(u_{k+1}-1\right),  \tag{5.8}\\
a b^{k}(n)=u_{2 k+1} a(n)+\left(u_{2 k+1}-1\right) n,  \tag{5.9}\\
a c^{k}(n)=u_{2 k+1} a(n)+\left(u_{2 k+1}-1\right) n-\frac{1}{3}\left(4 u_{2 k}-k\right)  \tag{5.10}\\
b^{k}(n)=u_{2 k} a(n)+\left(u_{2 k}+1\right) n,  \tag{5.11}\\
a^{k} b^{j}(n)=u_{k+2 j} a(n)+2 u_{k+2 j-1} n-\left(u_{k+1}-1\right)  \tag{5.12}\\
b^{j} a^{k}(n)=u_{k+2 j} a(n)+2 u_{k+2 j-1} n-\left(u_{k+2 j+1}-u_{2 j+1}\right),  \tag{5.13}\\
a^{k} b^{j}(n)-b^{j} a^{k}(n)=u_{k+2 j+1}-u_{k+1}-u_{2 j+1}+1  \tag{5.14}\\
=\frac{2}{3}\left(2^{k}-1\right)\left(2^{2 j}-1\right)
\end{gather*}
$$

We shall now evaluate $A_{w}$ and $B_{w}$ explicitly. For $w$ as given by (5.1) we define the weight of $w$ by means of

$$
\mathrm{p}=\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{w})=\alpha+2 \beta+2 \gamma+\alpha^{\prime}+2 \beta^{\prime}+2 \gamma^{\prime}+\ldots
$$

We shall show that

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{w}=u_{p}, \quad B_{w}=2 u_{p-1} \tag{5.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

The proof is by induction on p . For $\mathrm{p}=1$, (5.16) obviously holds. Assume that (5.16) holds up to and including the value p. By the inductive hypothesis, (5.5), (5.6), (5.7) become

$$
\begin{gather*}
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
A_{w a}=A_{p}+B_{p}=u_{p}+2 u_{p-1}=u_{p+1} \\
B_{w a}=2 A_{p}=2 u_{p}
\end{array}\right.  \tag{5.17}\\
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
A_{w b}=A_{w c}=3 A_{p}+B_{p}=3 u_{p}+2 u_{p-1}=u_{p+2} \\
B_{w p}=B_{w c}=2 A_{p}+2 B_{p}=2 u_{p}+2 u_{p-1}=u_{p+1}
\end{array} .\right.
\end{gather*}
$$

This evidently completes the induction.
As for $C_{w}$, we have

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
C_{w a}=2 u_{p}+C_{w}  \tag{5.19}\\
C_{w b}=C_{w} \\
C_{w c}=u_{p+1}+C_{w}
\end{array}\right.
$$

Unlike $A_{w}$ and $B_{w}$, the coefficient $C_{w}$ is not a function of the weight alone. For example

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{a}^{2}}=2, & \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{b}}=0, & \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{c}}=1, \\
\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{a}^{3}}=4, & \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{ab}}=0, & \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{ac}}=1 .
\end{array}
$$

Repeated application of (5.19) gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
& C_{a^{k}}=2\left(u_{1}+u_{2}+\cdots+u_{k-1}\right)=u_{k+1}-1 \\
& C_{b^{k}}=0 \\
& C_{c^{k}}=u_{1}+\cdots+u_{k}=\frac{1}{2}\left(u_{k+2}-1\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

of which the first two agree with (5.8) and (5.11).
We may state
Theorem 5.3. If $w$ is a word of weight $p$, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
w(n)-u_{p} a(n)+2 u_{p-1} n-C w_{w}, \tag{5.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $C_{w}$ can be evaluated by means of (5.19). If $w, w^{\prime}$ are any words of equal weight, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{w}(\mathrm{n})-\mathrm{w}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{w}^{\prime}}-\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{w}} . \tag{5.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Theorem 5.4. For any word w, the representation

$$
w=a^{\alpha} b^{\beta} c^{\gamma} a^{\alpha^{\prime}}{ }^{\beta^{\prime}} c^{\gamma^{\prime}} \ldots
$$

is unique.
Proof. The theorem is a consequence of the following observation. If $u, v$ are any words, then it follows from any one of

$$
\text { ua }=\mathrm{va}, \quad \mathrm{ub}=\mathrm{vb}, \quad \mathrm{uc}=\mathrm{vc}
$$

that $\mathrm{u}=\mathrm{v}$.
Theorem 5.5. The words $u, v$ satisfy $u v=v u$ if and only if there is a word $w$ such that

$$
u=w^{r}, \quad v=w^{s},
$$

where $r, s$ are non-negative integers.
Theorem 5.6. In the notation of Theorem 5.3, $C_{w}=C_{w}^{\prime}$ if and only if $w=w^{\prime}$. Remark. It follows from (5.20) that no multiple of $\mathrm{d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n})$ is a word function.

## 6. GENERATING FUNCTIONS

Put

$$
\begin{equation*}
A(x)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x^{a(n)}, \quad B(x)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x^{b(n)}, \quad C(x)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x^{c(n)} \tag{6.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
D(x)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x^{d(n)}, \quad D_{1}(x)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x^{d^{\prime}(n)}, \tag{6.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where of course $|x|<1$. Then clearly

$$
\begin{equation*}
A(x)+B(x)+C(x)=\frac{x}{1-x} \tag{6.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{D}(\mathrm{x})+\mathrm{D}_{1}(\mathrm{x})=\frac{\mathrm{x}}{1-\mathrm{x}} \tag{6.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since

$$
\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n})+1, \quad \mathrm{~d}(\mathrm{n})=2 \mathrm{~d}^{\prime}(\mathrm{n}),
$$

( 6.3 ) and ( 6.4 ) reduce to

$$
\begin{equation*}
A(x)+(1+x) C(x)=\frac{x}{1-x} \tag{6.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
D_{1}(x)+D_{1}\left(x^{2}\right)=\frac{x}{1-x} \tag{6.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

respectively.

It follows from (6.6) that

$$
\begin{aligned}
D_{1}(x) & =\frac{x}{1-x}-\frac{x^{2}}{1-x^{2}}+\frac{x^{4}}{1-x^{4}}-\cdots \\
& =\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}(-1)^{k} \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} x^{2^{k} r} \\
& =\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x^{n} \sum_{2^{k} r=n}(-1)^{k},
\end{aligned}
$$

so that

$$
d^{\prime}(n)=\sum_{2^{k} r=n}(-1)^{k} .
$$

This is equivalent to the result previously obtained that

$$
\mathrm{d}^{\prime}(\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}})=\left\{2^{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{M}}} \mid \mathrm{m} \text { even, } \quad \mathrm{M} \text { odd }\right\} .
$$

Theorem 6.1. Each of the functions $\mathrm{A}(\mathrm{x}), \mathrm{B}(\mathrm{x}), \mathrm{C}(\mathrm{x}), \mathrm{D}(\mathrm{x}), \mathrm{D}_{1}(\mathrm{x})$ has the unit circle as a natural boundary.

Proof. It will evidently suffice to prove the theorem for $A(x)$ and $D_{1}(x)$. We consider first the function $D_{1}(x)$.

To begin with, $D_{1}(x)$ has a singularity at $x=1$. Hence, by (6.6), $D_{1}(x)$ has a singularity at $\mathrm{x}=-1$. Replacing x by $\mathrm{x}^{2}$, (6.6) becomes

$$
D_{1}\left(x^{2}\right)+D_{1}\left(x^{4}\right)=\frac{x^{2}}{1-x^{2}}
$$

We infer that $D_{1}(x)$ has singularities at $x= \pm i$. Continuing in this way we show that $D_{1}(x)$ has singularities at

$$
\mathrm{x}=\mathrm{e}^{2 \mathrm{k} \pi \mathrm{i} / 2^{\mathrm{n}}} \quad\left(\mathrm{k}=1,3,5, \cdots, 2^{\mathrm{n}}-1 ; \mathrm{n}=1,2,3, \cdots\right)
$$

This proves that $D_{1}(x)$ cannot be continued analytically across the unit circle.
In the next place if the function

$$
f(x)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_{n} x^{n}
$$

where the $c_{n}=0$ or 1 , can be continued across the unit circle, then [1, p. 315]

$$
f(x)=\frac{P(x)}{1-x^{k}}
$$

where $P(x)$ is a polynomial and $k$ is some positive integer. Hence
(6.7)
$c_{n}=c_{n-k}$
( $\mathrm{n} \geq \mathrm{n}_{0}$ ).

Now assume that $A(x)$ can be continued across the unit circle. Then by (6.7), there exists an integer $k$ such that

$$
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{a}\left(\mathrm{n}_{1}\right)+\mathrm{k} \quad\left(\mathrm{n}>\mathrm{n}_{0}\right),
$$

where $n_{1}$ depends on $n$. It follows that

$$
a(n)=a(n-r)+k \quad\left(n>n_{0}\right)
$$

for some fixed r. This implies
(6.9) $d(n)=a(n-r)+k+r \quad\left(n>u_{0}\right)$.

However (6.9) contradicts the fact that $D(x)=D_{1}\left(x^{2}\right)$ cannot be continued across the unit circle.

Theorem 6.2. Let $w(n)$ be an arbitrary word function of positive weight and put

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{w}}(\mathrm{x})=\sum_{\mathrm{n}=1}^{\infty} \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{w}(\mathrm{n})} \tag{6.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then $F_{w}(x)$ cannot be continued across the unit circle.
Proof. Assume that $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{w}}(\mathrm{x})$ does admit of analytic continuation across the unit circle. Then there exist integers $r, k$ such that

$$
\mathrm{w}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{w}(\mathrm{n}-\mathrm{r})+\mathrm{s} \quad\left(\mathrm{n}>\mathrm{n}_{0}\right) .
$$

By (5.2) this becomes

$$
A_{w} a(n)+B_{w} r=A_{w}(n-r)+k
$$

This implies

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{w} d(n)=A_{w} d(n-r)+\left(A_{w}-B_{w}\right) r+k \tag{6.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $A_{w}>0,(6.11)$ contradicts the fact that $D(x)$ cannot be continued. Put

$$
\begin{equation*}
E(x)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x^{e(n)} \tag{6.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then, by Theorem 3.4,
(6.13)

$$
\mathrm{E}(\mathrm{x})=\frac{\mathrm{x}}{1-\mathrm{x}}+2 \mathrm{~A}(\mathrm{x})
$$

Also

$$
\begin{equation*}
(1-x)^{-1} A(x)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} e(n) x^{n} \tag{6.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the next place, by (3.8), (3.9), and (3.10),

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{A}(\mathrm{x}) & =\sum_{1}^{\infty} \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{a}^{2}(\mathrm{n})}+\sum_{1}^{\infty} \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{ab}(\mathrm{n})}+\sum_{1}^{\infty} \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{ac}(\mathrm{n})} \\
& =\mathrm{x}^{-2} \mathrm{~B}(\mathrm{x})+\left(1+\mathrm{x}^{-1}\right) \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{ab}}(\mathrm{x})
\end{aligned}
$$

Since

$$
\mathrm{A}(\mathrm{x})+\left(1+\mathrm{x}^{-1}\right) \mathrm{B}(\mathrm{x})=\frac{\mathrm{x}}{1-\mathrm{x}}
$$

it follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
(1+x)^{2} \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{ab}}(\mathrm{x})=\left(1+\mathrm{x}+\mathrm{x}^{2}\right) \mathrm{A}(\mathrm{x})-\frac{\mathrm{x}}{1-\mathrm{x}} \tag{6.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $w, w^{\prime}$ be two words of equal weight. Then by (5.21),

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{C}{ }_{w} F_{w}(x)=x^{C} w^{\prime} F_{w^{\prime}}(x) \tag{6.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus it suffices to consider the functions

We have

$$
F_{a^{k}}^{(x)} \quad(k=1,2,3, \cdots)
$$

By (5.8)

$$
\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{a}^{\mathrm{k}}}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{a}^{\mathrm{k}-1}}(\mathrm{x})+\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{a}^{k_{b}}}(\mathrm{x})+\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{a}^{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{c}}(\mathrm{x})
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
a^{k} b(n) & =u_{k} a b(n)+2 u_{k-1} b(n)-\left(u_{k+1}-1\right) \\
& =u_{k}(3 a(n)+2 n)+2 u_{k-1}(a(n)+2 n)-\left(u_{k+1}-1\right) \\
& =\left(3 u_{k}+2 u_{k-1}\right) a(n)+2\left(u_{k}+2 u_{k-1}\right) n-\left(u_{k+1}-1\right) \\
& =u_{k+2} a(n)+2 u_{k+1} n-\left(u_{k+1}-1\right) \\
& =a^{k+2}(n)+2^{k+1}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\mathrm{a}^{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{u}_{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{ac}(\mathrm{n})+2 \mathrm{u}_{\mathrm{k}-1} \mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n})-\left(\mathrm{u}_{\mathrm{k}+1}-1\right)
$$

$$
=u_{k}(3 a(n)+2 n-1)+2 u_{k-1}(a(n)+2 n-1)-\left(u_{k+1}-1\right)
$$

$$
=u_{k+2} a(n)+2 u_{k+1} n-\left(2 u_{k+1}-1\right)
$$

[Continued on page 550.]

$$
=a^{k+2}(n)+u_{k+2}
$$

# SPECIAL CASES OF FIBONACCI PERIODICITY 

## JUDY KRAMER and VERNER E. HOGGATT, JR.

 San Jose State University, San Jose, California
## 1. INTRODUCTION

This paper will deal with the periodicity of Fibonacci sequences; where the Fibonacci sequence $\left\{F_{n}\right\}_{n=0}^{\infty}$ is defined with $F_{0}=0, F_{1}=1$, and $F_{n+2}=F_{n+1}+F_{n}$; the Lucas sequence

$$
\left\{L_{n}\right\}_{n=0}^{\infty}
$$

is defined with $L_{0}=2, L_{1}=1$, and $L_{n+2}=L_{n+1}+L_{n}$; and the generalized Fibonacci sequence $\left\{H_{n}\right\}_{n=0}^{\infty}$ has any two starting values with $H_{n+2}=H_{n+1}+H_{n}$. We will see that in one case, that of modulo $2^{n}$, all generalized Fibonacci sequences will have the same period. In a second case, that of modulo $5^{\mathrm{n}}$, different sequences will have different periods. We will also consider the periods modulo $10^{\mathrm{n}}$. In each case except that of $10^{\mathrm{n}}$, the method of proof will be to show that with sequence $\left\{A_{n}\right\}$, modulus $m$, and period $p$, then $A_{n+p} \equiv$ $A_{n}(\bmod m)$ and $A_{n+1+p} \equiv A_{n+1}(\bmod m)$. Identities in the proof may be found in [1].

## 2. THE FIBONACCI CASE MOD $2^{\text {n }}$

Theorem 1. The period of the Fibonacci sequence modulo $2^{n}$ is $3.2^{n-1}$. We will prove that: (A) $\mathrm{F}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-1}} \equiv \mathrm{~F}_{0}\left(\bmod 2^{\mathrm{n}}\right)$ and (B) $\mathrm{F}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-1}+1} \equiv \mathrm{~F}_{1}\left(\bmod 2^{\mathrm{n}}\right)$.
A. The proof is by induction.
(1) When $\mathrm{n}=1, \quad \mathrm{~F}_{3.2^{\ell-1}}=\mathrm{F}_{3}=2 \equiv 0\left(\bmod 2^{\ell}\right)$.
(2) Suppose
$\mathrm{F}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{k}-1}} \equiv 0\left(\bmod 2^{\mathrm{k}}\right)$ 。
(3) Now,
from the identity
$\mathrm{F}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{k}}}=\mathrm{F}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{k}-1}} \mathrm{~L}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{k}-1}}$
$\mathrm{F}_{2 \mathrm{n}}=\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{n}}$.
(4) We claim

$$
\mathrm{L}_{3 \mathrm{k}} \equiv 0(\bmod 2)
$$

The proof is by induction.
(5) When $\mathrm{k}=1, \quad \mathrm{~L}_{3 \cdot 1}=4 \equiv 0(\bmod 2)$.
(6) Suppose $\mathrm{L}_{3 \mathrm{~m}} \equiv 0(\bmod 2)$.
(7) $\quad \mathrm{L}_{3(\mathrm{~m}+1)}=2 \mathrm{~L}_{3 \mathrm{~m}+1}+\mathrm{L}_{3 \mathrm{~m}} \equiv 0(\bmod 2)$
and statement (4) is established.
Using (3), with the induction hypothesis (2), and (4), it follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{F}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{k}}} \equiv 0\left(\bmod 2^{\mathrm{k}+1}\right) \tag{8}
\end{equation*}
$$

and Part A is proved.
B. (9) First, $\quad \mathrm{F}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-1}+1}=\left(\mathrm{F}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-2+1}}\right)^{2}+\left(\mathrm{F}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-2}}\right)^{2}$ using the identity $F_{m+n+1}=F_{m+1} F_{n+1}+F_{m} F_{n}$. Now, since $F_{3 \cdot 2} n-1 \equiv 0$ $\left(\bmod 2^{\mathrm{n}-1}\right)$ from Part A , it follows that
(11) Also

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\mathbb{F}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-2}}\right)^{2} \equiv 0\left(\bmod 2^{\mathrm{n}}\right) \tag{10}
\end{equation*}
$$

from the identity ${\underset{\mathrm{F}}{\mathrm{n}+1}}^{3 \cdot 2^{n}-2_{n-1}}-\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}^{2}=(-1)^{\mathrm{n}}$ and (10).
Part B follows from these three steps.

## 3. THE GENERAL FIBONACCI CASE MOD $2^{\text {n }}$

Theorem 2. The period of any generalized Fibonacci sequence modulo $2^{n}$ is $3 \cdot 2^{n-1}$. We will prove that: (A) $\mathrm{H}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-1}+1} \equiv \mathrm{H}_{1}\left(\bmod 2^{\mathrm{n}}\right)$ and (B) $\mathrm{H}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-1+2}} \equiv \mathrm{H}_{2}\left(\bmod 2_{\mathrm{n}}^{\mathrm{n}}\right)$.
A. We will have to consider three cases.

Case 1: $\mathrm{n}=1 . \quad \mathrm{H}_{3} \cdot 2^{1-1_{+1}}=\mathrm{H}_{4}=2 \mathrm{H}_{2}+\mathrm{H}_{1} \equiv \mathrm{H}_{1}\left(\bmod 2^{1}\right)$.
Case 2: $\mathrm{n}=2 . \quad \mathrm{H}_{3 \cdot 2^{2-1}+1}=\mathrm{H}_{7}=3 \mathrm{H}_{2}+5 \mathrm{H}_{1} \equiv \mathrm{H}_{1}\left(\bmod 2^{2}\right)$.
Case 3: $\mathrm{n}>2$.
(12) First, $H_{3 \cdot 2^{n-1+1}}=H_{3 \cdot 2^{n-2}}{ }_{+1} F_{3.2^{n-2}+1}+H_{3 \cdot 2^{n-2}}{ }^{\mathrm{F}} 3 \cdot 2^{n-2}$, from the identity $H_{m+n+1}=H_{m+1} F_{n+1}+H_{m} F_{n}$.
(13) We need the fact that $\mathrm{F}_{3 \cdot 2^{n-2}} \equiv 0\left(\bmod 2^{\mathrm{n}}\right)$ for $\mathrm{n}>2$, which can be proved by induction in the manner of the proof of 1-A.
(14) Next we claim $\mathrm{H}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-2}{ }^{\mathrm{F}} 3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-2+1}} \equiv \mathrm{H}_{1}\left(\bmod 2^{\mathrm{n}}\right)$ for $\mathrm{n}>2$. Since $H_{n+1}=H_{1} F_{n-1}+H_{2} F_{n}$, we can multiply both sides by $F_{n+1}$
(15) so
$\mathrm{H}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-2+1}} \mathrm{~F}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-2+1}}=\mathrm{H}_{1} \mathrm{~F}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-2-1}} \mathrm{~F}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-2}{ }_{+1}}$

$$
+\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{~F}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-2^{2}} \mathrm{~F}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-2}+1} .}
$$

(16) Now, $\quad \mathrm{F}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-2}-1} \mathrm{~F}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-2}+1} \equiv 1\left(\bmod 2^{\mathrm{n}}\right) \quad \mathrm{n}>2$
using the identity $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}+1} \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{n}-1}-\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}^{2}=(-1)^{\mathrm{n}}$ and (13).
Our claim in (14) follows from (15), (16), and (13) and Case 3 follows from (12), (13), and (16).
B. (17) First, $\mathrm{H}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-1}+2}=\mathrm{H}_{1} \mathrm{~F}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-1}}+\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{~F}_{3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-1}+1}$ from the identity $\mathrm{H}_{\mathrm{n}+2}=\mathrm{H}_{1} \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{n}}+\mathrm{F}_{2} \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{n}+1}$. Since $F_{3.2^{n-1}} \equiv 1\left(\bmod 2^{n}\right)$ from $1-A$, and $F_{3 \cdot 2^{n-1}+1} \equiv 1\left(\bmod 2^{n}\right)$ from $1-B$, Part B follows immediately.
One of the key parts in the proof of Theorem 1 is being able to write $\mathrm{F}_{3.2^{\mathrm{k}}}$ in terms of $F_{3 \cdot 2^{k-1}}$ as in statement (3). For the next theorem, an analogous result is needed for $\mathrm{F}_{5 \mathrm{n}+1}$ in terms of $\mathrm{F}_{5 \mathrm{n}}$.

## 4. THE FIBONACCI CASE MOD $5^{n}$

We need a simple lemma.
Lemma. $\quad F_{5 n+1}=F_{5^{n}}\left(L_{4.5 n}-L_{2.5 n}+1\right), \quad n=1,2, \cdots$.
Proof. We will use the Binet forms

$$
\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}=\frac{\alpha^{\mathrm{n}}-\beta^{\mathrm{n}}}{\alpha-\beta} \quad \text { and } \quad \mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{n}}=\alpha^{\mathrm{n}}+\beta^{\mathrm{n}},
$$

where

$$
\alpha=\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2} \quad \text { and } \quad \beta=\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}
$$

Note that $\alpha \beta=-1$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{F}_{5^{\mathrm{n}+1}} & =\frac{\alpha^{5^{\mathrm{n}+1}}-\beta^{5^{\mathrm{n}+1}}}{\alpha-\beta}=\frac{\alpha^{5^{\mathrm{n}} \cdot 5}-\beta^{5^{\mathrm{n}} \cdot 5}}{\alpha-\beta} \\
& =\frac{\left(\alpha^{5^{\mathrm{n}}}-\beta^{5^{\mathrm{n}}}\right)}{\alpha-\beta}\left(\alpha^{5^{\mathrm{n}} \cdot 4}+\alpha^{5^{\mathrm{n}} \cdot 3} \beta_{\beta^{5^{\mathrm{n}}}}^{\left.\alpha-\alpha^{5^{\mathrm{n}} \cdot 2}+\beta^{5^{\mathrm{n}} \cdot 2}+\alpha^{5^{\mathrm{n}}} \beta^{5^{\mathrm{n}} \cdot 3}+\beta^{5^{\mathrm{n}} \cdot 4}\right)}\right. \\
& =\frac{\left(\alpha^{5^{\mathrm{n}}}-\beta^{5^{\mathrm{n}}}\right)}{\alpha-\beta}\left[\alpha^{5^{\mathrm{n}} \cdot 4}+\beta^{5^{\mathrm{n}} \cdot 4}+(\alpha \beta)^{\left.5^{\mathrm{n}}\left(\alpha^{5^{\mathrm{n}} \cdot 2}+\beta^{5^{\mathrm{n}} \cdot 2}\right)+(\alpha \beta)^{5^{\mathrm{n}} \cdot 2}\right]}\right. \\
& \left.=\mathrm{F}_{5^{\mathrm{n}^{(L}}{ }_{5}{ }^{\mathrm{n}} \cdot 4-\mathrm{L}{ }_{5} \mathrm{n} \cdot 2}+1\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Theorem 3. The period of the Fibonacci numbers modulo $5^{n}$ is $4.5^{n}$.
Proof. We will prove that: (A) $\mathrm{F}_{4.5 \mathrm{n}} \equiv \mathrm{F}_{0}\left(\bmod 5^{\mathrm{n}}\right)$ and (B) $\mathrm{F}_{4.5^{n}+1} \equiv \mathrm{~F}_{1}\left(\bmod 5^{\mathrm{n}}\right)$.

The proof is by induction.
(20) When $\mathrm{n}=1, \quad \mathrm{~F}_{5^{1}} \equiv \mathrm{~F}_{5}=5 \equiv 0\left(\bmod 5^{1}\right)$.
(21) Suppose $\quad F_{5^{k}} \equiv 0 \quad\left(\bmod 5^{k}\right)$.
(22) Now, $\mathrm{F}_{5^{\mathrm{k}+1}}=\mathrm{F}_{5^{\mathrm{k}}}\left(\mathrm{L}_{4 \cdot 5^{\mathrm{k}}}-\mathrm{L}_{2 \cdot 5^{\mathrm{k}}}+1\right)$ from the Lemma.
(23)
from the identity $\mathrm{L}_{4 \mathrm{n}}-2=5 \mathrm{~F}_{2 \mathrm{n}}^{2}$,
(24) and

$$
\mathrm{L}_{2 \cdot 5} \mathrm{k} \equiv-2 \quad(\bmod 5)
$$

from the identity $L_{2(2 n+1)}+2=5 \mathrm{~F}_{2 n+1}^{2}$.
Using the induction hypothesis (21), with (22), (23), and (24),

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{F}_{5^{\mathrm{k}+1}} \equiv 0\left(\bmod 5^{\mathrm{k}+1}\right) \tag{25}
\end{equation*}
$$

and Part A follows.
B. (26) First

$$
F_{4 \cdot 5^{n}+1}=\left(F_{2 \cdot 5} n_{+1}\right)^{2}+\left(F_{2 \cdot 5}\right)^{2}
$$

using the identity $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{m}+\mathrm{n}+1}=\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{m}+1} \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{n}+1}+\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}$.
From (19) it follows that
(28) Also

$$
\begin{gather*}
\left(\mathrm{F}_{2 \cdot 5}\right)^{2} \equiv 0 \quad\left(\bmod 5^{\mathrm{n}}\right) .  \tag{27}\\
\left(\mathrm{F}_{2 \cdot 5^{\mathrm{n}_{+1}}}\right)^{2} \equiv 1 \quad\left(\bmod 5^{\mathrm{n}}\right)
\end{gather*}
$$

using the identity ${\underset{F}{n+1}} F_{n-1}-F_{n}^{2}=(-1)^{n}$ and (27).
Consequently Part B is proved.

## 5. THE LUCAS CASE MOD $5^{\mathrm{n}}$

Theorem 4. The period of the Lucas numbers modulo $5^{n}$ is $4.5^{n-1}$.
Proof. We will prove that: (A) $\mathrm{L}_{4.5^{\mathrm{n}-1}} \equiv \mathrm{~L}_{0}\left(\bmod 5^{\mathrm{n}}\right)$ and (B) $\mathrm{L}_{4.5^{\mathrm{n}-1}+1} \equiv \mathrm{~L}_{1}(\bmod$ $5^{\mathrm{n}}$ 。
A. (29) First

$$
\mathrm{L}_{4 \cdot 5^{\mathrm{n}}-1}=5\left(\mathrm{~F}_{2 \cdot 5^{\mathrm{n}-1}}\right)^{2}+2
$$

from the identity $\quad L_{4 n}-2=5 F_{2 n}^{2}$. From (19) it can be shown that
(31) So

$$
\begin{gather*}
\left(\mathrm{F}_{2 \cdot 5^{\mathrm{n}-1}}\right)^{2} \equiv 0 \quad\left(\bmod 5^{\mathrm{n}-1}\right)  \tag{30}\\
5\left(\mathrm{~F}_{2 \cdot 5^{\mathrm{n}-1}}\right)^{2} \equiv 0 \quad\left(\bmod 5^{\mathrm{n}}\right)
\end{gather*}
$$

and Part A is proved.
B. (32) First

$$
\mathrm{L}_{4.5^{\mathrm{n}+1}+2}=5\left(\mathrm{~F} 2.5^{\mathrm{n}-1_{+1}}\right)^{2}-2
$$ from the identity $\quad L_{4 n+2}=5 F_{2 n+1}^{2}-2$.

(33) In a method similar to that used in showing (28), it can be shown that
(34) Therefore

$$
\left(\mathrm{F}_{2 \cdot 5^{\mathrm{n}-1}+1}\right)^{2} \equiv 1\left(\bmod 5^{\mathrm{n}}\right)
$$

$L_{4.5^{\mathrm{n}-1}{ }_{+2}} \equiv 3\left(\bmod 5^{\mathrm{n}}\right)$
(35) From A and (34), $\mathrm{L}_{4 \cdot 5^{\mathrm{n}-1_{+2}}}-\mathrm{L}_{4 \cdot 5^{\mathrm{n}-1}} \equiv 1\left(\bmod 5^{\mathrm{n}}\right)$
(36) $\quad L_{4.5^{n-1}} \equiv 1(\bmod 5 n)$ since $L_{n+2}=L_{n+1}+L_{n}$.

As shown in [2], the periods of the Fibonacci sequences modulo $10^{\mathrm{n}}$ will be the least common multiple of the periods mod $2^{\mathrm{n}}$ and $\bmod 5^{\mathrm{n}}$. A summary of the periods is below.

| Sequence | $\bmod 2^{\mathrm{n}}$ <br> $\mathrm{n}=1,2, \cdots$ | $\bmod 5^{\mathrm{n}}$ <br> $\mathrm{n}=1,2, \cdots$ | $\bmod 10$ | $\bmod 100$ | $\bmod 10^{\mathrm{n}}$ <br> $\mathrm{n}=3,4, \cdots$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Fibonacci $\left\{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}\right\}$ | $3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-1}$ | $4 \cdot 5^{\mathrm{n}}$ | 60 | 300 | $15 \cdot 10^{\mathrm{n}-1}$ |
| Lucas $\left\{\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{n}}\right\}$ | $3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-1}$ | $4 \cdot 5^{\mathrm{n}-1}$ | 12 | 60 | $3 \cdot 10^{\mathrm{n}-1}$ |
| Generalized <br> Fibonacci $\left\{\mathrm{H}_{\mathrm{n}}\right\}$ | $3 \cdot 2^{\mathrm{n}-1}$ | variable | variable | variable | variable |

## 6. SOME PARTING OBSERVATIONS

We note in passing that we have found some solutions to $n / F_{n}$ in the statement $F_{5^{n}} \equiv 0$ $\bmod 5^{n}$. To this we add two statements also involving solutions to $L_{n} \equiv 0 \bmod n$.

| Theorem: | $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{n}} \equiv 1 \quad \bmod \mathrm{n} \quad$ for n a prime. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Theorem: | $\mathrm{L}_{2} \cdot 3^{\mathrm{k}} \equiv 0 \bmod 2 \cdot 3^{\mathrm{k}}, \quad \mathrm{k}=1,2,3, \ldots$ |
| Theorem: | $\mathrm{F} 2^{2} \cdot 3^{\mathrm{k}} \equiv 0 \bmod 2^{2} \cdot 3^{\mathrm{k}}, \quad \mathrm{k}=1,2,3, \cdots$ |

A new paper by Hoggatt and Bicknell will further discuss these ideas.

## REFERENCES

1. V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., Fibonacci and Lucas Numbers, Houghton Mifflin, Boston, 1969.
2. D. D. Wall, "Fibonacci Series Modulo m,"American Mathematical Monthly, Vol. 67 June-July 1960, pp. 525-532.
3. V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., "A Type of Periodicity for Fibonacci Numbers," Math. Magazine, Jan.-Feb. 1955, p. 139.
4. Frederick Gebhardt, "Generating Pseudo-Random Numbers by Shuffling a Fibonacci Sequence, " Mathematics of Computation, Oct. 1967, pp. 708-709.
[Continued on page 530.]

## CONCAVITY PROPERTIES OF CERTAIN SEQUENCES OF NUMBERS

L. CARLITZ<br>Duke University, Durham, North Carolina

A set of non-negative real numbers $C_{k}(k=1,2, \cdots, N)$ is said to be unimodal if there exists an integer $n$ such that

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
C_{k} \leq C_{k+1} & (1 \leq k<n) \\
C_{k} \geq C_{k+1} & (n \leq k<N)
\end{array}
$$

A stronger property is logarithmic concavity:
(1)

$$
C_{k}^{2} \geq C_{k+1} C_{k-1} \quad(1<k<N)
$$

Strong logarithmic concavity (SLC) means that the inequality in (1) is strict for all $k$. In a recent paper, Lieb [1] has proved that the Stirling numbers of the second kind

$$
S(N, k)=\frac{1}{k!} \sum_{j=0}^{k}(-1)^{k-j}\binom{k}{j} j^{N}
$$

have the SLC property. The proof makes use of Newton's inequality. If the polynomial

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q(x)=\sum_{k=1}^{N} C_{k} x^{k} \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

has only real roots, then

$$
\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{k}}^{2} \geq \frac{\mathrm{k}(\mathrm{~N}-\mathrm{k}+1)}{(\mathrm{k}-1)(\mathrm{N}-\mathrm{k})} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{k}+1} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{k}-1} \quad(1<\mathrm{k}<\mathrm{N})
$$

In view of the above, it is of some interest to exhibit sequences $\left\{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{k}}\right\}$ with the SLC property for which the corresponding polynomial does not have the SLC property. Such an example is furnished by

[^2]$$
\left(1+x+x^{2}\right)^{n}=\sum_{k=0}^{2 n} c(n, k) x^{k}
$$

It follows at once from (3) that $c(n, k)$ satisfies the recurrence
(4)

$$
\mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n}+1, \mathrm{k})=\mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k}-2)+\mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k}-1)+\mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k}) .
$$

We shall show first that, for $\mathrm{n} \geq 2$,
(5)

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
c(n, k)<c(n, k+1) & (0 \leq k<n) \\
c(n, k)>c(n, k+1) & (n \leq k<2 n) .
\end{array}
$$

Since
(7)

$$
c(n, k)=c(n, 2 n-k),
$$

(5) and (6) are equivalent so that it suffices to prove (5). Since

$$
\left(1+x+x^{2}\right)^{2}=1+2 x+3 x^{2}+2 x^{3}+x^{2}
$$

it is clear that (5) holds for $\mathrm{n}=2$. Assume that (5) holds for $2 \leq \mathrm{n} \leq m$. Then, for $\mathrm{k}<\mathrm{m}$,

$$
c(m+1, k+1)-c(m+1, k)=c(m, k+1)-c(m, k-2)>0 .
$$

For $\mathrm{k}=\mathrm{m}$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
c(m+1 & , m+1)-c(m+1, m) \\
& =2 c(m, m-1)+c(m, m)-[c(m, m-2)+c(m, m-1)+c(m, m)] \\
& =c(m, m-1)-c(m, m-2)>0
\end{aligned}
$$

This completes the proof of (5).
We remark that $c(n, n)$ satisfies

$$
\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c(n, n) x^{n}=\left(1-2 x-3 x^{2}\right)^{-\frac{1}{2}}
$$

For proof see [2, p. 126, No. 217].
We shall now show that, for $\mathrm{n} \geq 2$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{c}^{2}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k})>\mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k}+1) \mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k}-1) \quad(0<\mathrm{k}<2 \mathrm{n}) \tag{8}
\end{equation*}
$$

This holds for $n=2$. We assume that (8) holds for $2 \leq n \leq m$.
Note that (8) implies
(9)

$$
\mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{j}) \mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k})>\mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{j}-1) \mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k}+1) \quad(0<\mathrm{j} \leq \mathrm{k}<2 \mathrm{n})
$$

Indeed, by (8)

$$
\frac{c(n, k)}{c(n, k+1)}>\frac{c(n, k-1)}{c(n, k)}
$$

which implies

$$
\frac{c(n, k)}{c(n, k-1)} \quad \frac{c(n, j-1)}{c(n, j)}
$$

Thus, for $0<k<2 m$,
$\begin{aligned} &\left|\begin{array}{ll}c(m+1, k) & c(m+1, k+1) \\ c(m+1, k-1) & c(m+1, k)\end{array}\right| \\ &=\left|\begin{array}{lll}c(m, k-2)+c(m, k-1)+c(m, k) & c(m, k-1)+c(m, k)+c(m, k+1) \\ c(m, k-3)+c(m, k-2)+c(m, k-1) & c(m, k-2)+c(m, k-1)+c(m, k)\end{array}\right| \\ &=\left|\begin{array}{lll}c(m, k-2) & c(m, k-1) \\ c(m, k-3) & c(m, k-2)\end{array}\right|+\left|\begin{array}{ll}c(m, k-2) & c(m, k) \\ c(m, k-3) & c(m, k-1)\end{array}\right| \\ &+\left|\begin{array}{ll}c(m, k-2) & c(m, k+1) \\ c(m, k-3) & c(m, k)\end{array}\right|+\left|\begin{array}{ll}c(m, k-1) & c(m, k) \\ c(m, k-2) & c(m, k-1)\end{array}\right| \\ &+\left|\begin{array}{ll}c(m, k-1) & c(m, k+1) \\ c(m, k-2) & c(m, k)\end{array}\right|+\left|\begin{array}{ll}c(m, k) & c(m, k-1) \\ c(m, k-1) & c(m, k-2)\end{array}\right| \\ &+\left|\begin{array}{ll}c(m, k) & c(m, k+1) \\ c(m, k-1) & c(m, k)\end{array}\right| .\end{aligned}$

The fourth and sixth determinants cancel while each of the remaining five is positive by (9). Hence

$$
\mathrm{c}^{2}(\mathrm{~m}+1, \mathrm{k})>\mathrm{c}(\mathrm{~m}+1, \mathrm{k}-1) \mathrm{c}(\mathrm{~m}+1, \mathrm{k}) \quad(0<\mathrm{k}<2 \mathrm{~m})
$$

As for the excluded values, we have by (7)
$c^{2}(m+1,2 m)-c(m+1,2 m-1) c(m+1,2 m-1)=c^{2}(m+1,2)-c(m+1,3) c(m+1,1)>0$, $c^{2}(m+1,2 m+1)-c(m+1,2 m) c(m+1,2 m+2)=c^{2}(m+1,1)-c(m+1,2) c(m+1,0)>0$.

In a similar way we can show that the coefficients of $c_{r}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k})$ defined by

$$
\left(1+x+\cdots+x^{r}\right)^{n}=\sum_{k=0}^{n r} c_{r}(n, k) x^{k}
$$

have the SLC property for $n \geq 2$.
[Continued on page 530.]

# A CONJECTURE CONCERNING LUCAS NUMBERS 

## L. CARLITZ

Duke University, Durham, North Carolina

Anaya and Crump (now Anaya and Anaya) [1] have proved that

$$
\left[\mathrm{a}^{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{n}}+\frac{1}{2}\right]=\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}+\mathrm{k}} \quad(\mathrm{n} \geq \mathrm{k} \geq 1)
$$

where $a=\frac{1}{2}(1+\sqrt{5})$ and $[x]$ denotes the greatest integer $\leq x$. They remark that it seems reasonable that

$$
\left[\mathrm{a}^{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{n}}+\frac{1}{2}\right]=\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{n}+\mathrm{k}}
$$

when $n$ is somewhat greater than $k$.
We shall show that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\mathrm{a}^{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{n}}+\frac{1}{2}\right]=\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{n}+\mathrm{k}} \quad(\mathrm{n} \geq \mathrm{k}+2, \mathrm{k} \geq 2) \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Moreover, for $\mathrm{k}=1$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[a L_{n}+\frac{1}{2}\right]=L_{n+1} \quad(n \geq 4) \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

To prove (1), it suffices to show that
(3)

$$
\left|a^{k} L_{n}-L_{n+k}\right|<\frac{1}{2} \quad(n \geq k+2, k \geq 2),
$$

that is,
(4)

$$
\left|\mathrm{b}^{\mathrm{n}}\left(\mathrm{a}^{\mathrm{k}}-\mathrm{b}^{\mathrm{k}}\right)\right|<\frac{1}{2} \quad(\mathrm{n} \geq \mathrm{k}+2, \mathrm{k} \geq 2)
$$

where we have used

$$
L_{n}=a^{n}+b^{n}, \quad b=\frac{1}{2}(1-\sqrt{5}) .
$$

Clearly (4) is satisfied if

$$
a^{-n}\left(a^{k}+a^{-k}\right)<\frac{1}{2} \quad(n \geq k+2, k \geq 2)
$$

Thus it is enough to show that

$$
a^{-k-2}\left(a^{k}+a^{-k}\right)<\frac{1}{2} \quad(k \geq 2)
$$

that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{a}^{-2}+\mathrm{a}^{-2 \mathrm{k}-2}<\frac{1}{2} \quad(\mathrm{k} \geq 2) \tag{5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since

$$
\mathrm{a}^{-2}+\mathrm{a}^{-6}=\frac{3-\sqrt{5}}{2}-9-4 \sqrt{5}=\frac{1}{2}(21-9 \sqrt{5})<\frac{1}{2},
$$

# ADDENDUM TO THE PAPER "FIBONACCI REPRESENTATIONS" 

L. CARLITZ ${ }^{\star}$ and RICHARD SCOVILLE<br>Duke University, Durham, North Carolina and<br>VERNER E. HOGGATT, JR.<br>San Jose State University, San Jose, California

1. The presentation and investigation of the functions $a$ and $b$ given in the paper cited in the title [1] can be simplified if we consider the following: Every positive integer N has a unique representation in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{N}=\delta_{2} \mathrm{~F}_{2}+\delta_{3} \mathrm{~F}_{3}+\cdots \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\delta_{i}$ is either 0 or 1 and $\delta_{i} \delta_{i+1}=0$. This canonical or Zeckendorf representation may be written more briefly

$$
\begin{equation*}
N=\cdot \delta_{2} \delta_{3} \delta_{4} \delta_{5} \cdots \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $A$ be the sequence of length 1 consisting of a $0, A=(0)$, and let $B$ be the sequence of length $2, B=(1,0)$. Clearly, then, $N$ can be written uniquely as a sequence of $A^{\prime} s$ and $B^{\prime} S$, and any sequence of $A^{\prime} s$ and $B^{\prime} s$, infinite on the right, containing only a finite number of $\mathrm{B}^{\prime} \mathrm{s}$, represents a non-negative integer. We may regard $A$ and $B$ as functions. For instance $A(N)$ is to be the sequence obtained by adjoining $A$ to the left of the sequence representing $N$, and similarly for $B(N)$.

Then we see immediately that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{N}+\mathrm{A}(\mathrm{~N})+1=\mathrm{B}(\mathrm{~N}), \quad(\mathrm{N} \geq 0) \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now define
(4)

$$
\begin{cases}a(N)=A(N-1)+1 & (N \geq 1) \\ b(N)=B(N-1)+1 & (N \geq 1)\end{cases}
$$

Then (3) becomes

[^3]$$
N+a(N)=b(N), \quad N \geq 1
$$

Hence properties (2.2), (2.3) and (2.4) of [1] are easily verified, so we have, in fact,
(6)

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~N})=[\alpha \mathrm{N}] \\
\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{~N})=\left[\alpha^{2} \mathrm{~N}\right], \quad \alpha=(1+\sqrt{5}) / 2
\end{array}\right.
$$

as before, ( 1.6 ) of [1]).
The advantage of introducing $A$ and $B$ appears when we calculate $e(a)$ and $e(b)$. We have

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~N}))=\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{~A}(\mathrm{~N}-1)+1)=\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{~A}(\mathrm{~N}-1))+1=\mathrm{N}  \tag{7}\\
\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{~b}(\mathrm{~N}))=\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{~B}(\mathrm{~N}-1)+1)=1+\mathrm{A}(\mathrm{~N}-1)=\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~N})
\end{array}\right.
$$

The function e is defined by (1.7) in [1]:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{e}\left(\delta_{2} \mathrm{~F}_{2}+\delta_{3} \mathrm{~F}_{3}+\cdots\right)=\delta_{2} \mathrm{~F}_{1}+\delta_{3} \mathrm{~F}_{2}+\cdots \tag{8}
\end{equation*}
$$

To obtain (7) we have used the fact that $e(N)$ is independent of the Fibonacci representation chosen for N .

It is also useful to define $\mathrm{E}(\mathrm{N})$ by means of
(9)

$$
\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{~N})=\mathrm{E}(\mathrm{~N}-1)+1 ;
$$

this definition may be compared with (4). Let $N$ have the canonical representation (1) and consider

$$
\begin{equation*}
N+1=1+\cdot \delta_{2} \delta_{3} \delta_{4} \cdots \tag{10}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $\delta_{2}=0$ we may write

$$
\mathrm{N}+1=\cdot 1 \delta_{3} \delta_{4} \cdots
$$

This representation may not be canonical. However, by (8) we have

$$
\mathrm{e}\left(\mathrm{~N}+1=1+\cdot \delta_{3} \delta_{4} \delta_{5} \cdots\right.
$$

Hence, by (8) and (9),

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{E}(\mathrm{~N})=\cdot \delta_{3} \delta_{4} \delta_{5} \cdots \tag{11}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $\delta_{2}=1$, then $\delta_{3}=0$ and we get

$$
\mathrm{N}+1=\cdot 01 \delta_{4} \delta_{5} \cdots
$$

Again this representation may not be canonical but, by (8),

$$
\mathrm{e}(\mathrm{~N}+1)=\cdot 1 \delta_{4} \delta_{5} \cdots=1+\cdot \delta_{3} \delta_{4} \delta_{5} \cdots
$$

It follows that

$$
\mathrm{E}(\mathrm{~N})=\cdot \delta_{3} \delta_{4} \delta_{5} \cdots
$$

Thus in any case if N has the canonical representation (1), $\mathrm{E}(\mathrm{N})$ is determined by (11).

To sum up we state the following.
Theorem. Let N have the canonical representation

$$
\mathrm{N}=\cdot \delta_{2} \delta_{3} \delta_{4} \cdots
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{A}(\mathrm{~N})=\cdot 0 \delta_{2} \delta_{3} \delta_{4} \cdots \\
& \mathrm{~B}(\mathrm{~N})=\cdot 10 \delta_{2} \delta_{3} \delta_{4} \ldots \\
& \mathrm{E}(\mathrm{~N})=\cdot \delta_{3} \delta_{4} \delta_{5} \cdots
\end{aligned}
$$

2. Similar observations may be made for Fibonacci representations of higher order. For instance, if we put

$$
\begin{equation*}
A=(0), \quad B=(10), \quad C=(110) \tag{12}
\end{equation*}
$$

then the relations between $A, B, C$ and $a, b, c$ of [2] are given by

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\mathrm{a}(\mathrm{~N})=\mathrm{A}(\mathrm{~N}-1)+1  \tag{13}\\
\mathrm{~b}(\mathrm{~N})=\mathrm{B}(\mathrm{~N}-1)+1 \\
\mathrm{c}(\mathrm{~N})=\mathrm{C}(\mathrm{~N}-1)+1
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $\mathrm{N} \geq 1$.
3. By Theorem 11 of [1]
(14)

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
N \in(a) \rightleftarrows 0<\left\{\frac{N}{\alpha^{2}}\right\}<\frac{1}{2}, \\
N \in(b) \rightleftarrows \frac{1}{\alpha}<\left\{\frac{N}{\alpha^{2}}\right\}<1
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $\{\mathrm{x}\}$ denotes the fractional part of x . The possibility $\left\{\mathrm{N} / \alpha^{2}\right\}=1 / \alpha$ never occurs.
We should like to point out that (14) can be replaced by the following slightly simpler criterion.
(15)

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\mathrm{N} \in(\mathrm{a}) \rightleftarrows\{\alpha \mathrm{N}\}>\frac{1}{\alpha^{2}} \\
\mathrm{~N} \in(\mathrm{~b}) \rightleftarrows\{\alpha \mathrm{N}\}<\frac{1}{\alpha^{2}}
\end{array}\right.
$$

As above, $\{\alpha N\}=1 / \alpha^{2}$ is impossible.
To see that (14) and (15) are equivalent, it suffices to observe that

$$
\left\{\frac{\mathrm{N}}{\alpha^{2}}\right\}=\{(2-\alpha) \mathrm{N}\}=1-\{\alpha \mathrm{N}\}
$$

## REFERENCES

1. L. Carlitz, Richard Scoville and V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., "Fibonacci Representations," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 10, No. 1.(1972), pp. 1-28.
2. L. Carlitz, Richard Scoville and V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., "Fibonacci Representations of Higher Order," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 10, No. 1 (1972), pp. 43-69.
[Continued from page 522.]
3. Stephen P. Geller, "A Computer Investigation of a Property of the Fibonacci Sequence," Fibonacci Quarterly, April 1963, p. 84.
4. Dov Jarden, "On the Periodicity of the Last Digits of the Fibonacci Numbers," Fibonacci Quarterly, Dec. 1963, pp. 21-22.
[Continued from page 525.]

## REFERENCES

1. E. H. Lieb, "Concavity Properties and a Generating Function for Stirling Numbers," J. of Combinatorial Theory, Vol. 5 (1968), pp. 203-206.
2. G. Pólya and G. Szegb, Aufgaben und Lehrsả̉tze aus der Analysis I, Berlin, 1925.

# SEQUENCES, PATHS, BALLOT NUMBERS 

L. CARLITZ ${ }^{\star}$<br>Duke University, Durham, North Carolina

## 1. INTRODUCTION

Consider the sequences of positive integers $\left(a_{1}, a_{2}, \cdots, a_{n}\right)$ that satisfy the following conditions:

$$
\begin{equation*}
1=a_{1} \leq a_{2} \leq \cdots \leq a_{n} \tag{1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

and
(1.2)
$a_{i} \leq i$
( $1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{n}$ ).

The number of such sequences with $a_{n}=k$, where $k$ is fixed, $1 \leq k \leq n$, will be denoted by $f(n, k)$. Thus the total number of sequences satisfying (1.1) and (1.2) is equal to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{k=1}^{n} f(n, k) \tag{1,3}
\end{equation*}
$$

The numbers $\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k})$ were called two-element lattice permutations by MacMahon [6, p. 167 ]. Two-element lattice permutations have $n$ elements of one kind, $k$ of a second kind with $k \leq n$, and are such that if $a_{r}$ is the number of the first kind in the first $r$ and $b_{r}$ is the corresponding number of the second kind, then $a_{r} \geq b_{r}$ for every $r$. Another way of putting it is that the elements of the first kind are thought of as votes for candidate $A_{2}$, those of the second kind as votes for candidate $B$; the lattice permutation is then an election return with final vote ( $\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k}$ ) which is such that all partial returns correctly predict the winner. As still another interpretation, let each element of the firstkind be represented as a unit horizontal line and each of the second kind as a unit vertical line, then the permutation represents a path from ( 1,1 ) to ( $n, k$ ) which does not cross the line $y=k$. The illustration at the top of the following page shows an admissible path from $(1,1)$ to $(7,6)$.

In the present paper we discuss some of the basic properties of $f(n, k)$ and related functions. We also discuss briefly some extensions, in particular the q-analog [3]

$$
\begin{equation*}
f(n, k, q)=\sum q^{a_{1}+a_{2}+\cdots+a_{n}}, \tag{1.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

[^4]
where the summation is over all $a_{1}, a_{2}, \cdots, a_{n}$ such that
$$
1=a_{1} \leq a_{2} \leq \cdots \leq a_{n}=k
$$
and
$$
\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{i}} \leq \mathrm{i} \quad(1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{n})
$$
furnishes a useful generalization of $f(n, k)$. Many of the properties of $f(n, k)$ carry over to the general case.

The list of references at the end of the paper is by no means complete. A comprehensive bibliography of Catalan numbers is included in [1].
2. It follows at once from the definition that
(2.1)

$$
f(n, k)=\sum_{j=1}^{k} f(n-1, j) \quad(1 \leq k \leq n ; n>1)
$$

where it is understood that $f(n-1, n)=0$. From (2.1) we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k})=\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k}-1)+\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}-1, \mathrm{k}) \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where again $1 \leq \mathrm{k} \leq \mathrm{n}, \mathrm{n}>1$.
Making use of either (2.1) or (2.2) we can easily compute the table shown at the top of the following page.

It is evident from (2.1) that the total number of sequences satisfying (1.1) and (1.2) is equal to
(2:3)

$$
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}+1, \mathrm{n}+1)=\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}+1, \mathrm{n})
$$

$\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k}):$| n | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
| :---: | ---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2 | 1 | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3 | 1 | 2 | 2 |  |  |  |  |
| 4 | 1 | 3 | 5 | 5 |  |  |  |
| 5 | 1 | 4 | 9 | 14 | 14 |  |  |
| 6 | 1 | 5 | 14 | 28 | 42 | 42 |  |
| 7 | 1 | 6 | 20 | 48 | 90 | 132 | 132 |

We now define
(2.4)

$$
b(n, k)=\sum_{j=1}^{k} 2^{k-j} f(n, j)
$$

Using (2.2) we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
b(n, k) & =\sum_{j=1}^{k} 2^{k-j}\{f(n, j-1)+f(n-1, j)\} \\
& =\sum_{j=1}^{k-1} 2^{k-j-1} f(n, j)+\sum_{j=1}^{k} 2^{k-j}(f(n-1, j)
\end{aligned}
$$

so that
(2.5)

$$
b(n, k)=b(n, k-1)+b(n-1, k)
$$

$$
(1 \leq \mathrm{k}<\mathrm{n})
$$

However, for $k=n$, we get
(2.6)

$$
b(n, n)=b(n, n-1)+2 b(n-1, n-1)
$$

It follows from (2.5) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
b(n, k)=\sum_{j=1}^{k} b(n-1, j) \quad(1 \leq k \leq n) ; \tag{2.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

however
(2.8)

$$
b(n, n)=\sum_{j=1}^{n-1} b(n-1, j)+2 b(n-1, n-1) .
$$

The table shown at the top of the following page is easily computed using either (2.4) or (2.5) and (2.6).

Examination of the table suggests the following formula.
(2.9)

$$
b(n, k)=\binom{n+k-1}{k-1} \quad(1 \leq k \leq n)
$$

It is clear from (2.4) that

| n | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2 | 1 | 3 |  |  |  |  |
| 3 | 1 | 4 | 10 |  |  |  |
| 4 | 1 | 5 | 15 | 35 |  |  |
| 5 | 1 | 6 | 21 | 56 | 126 |  |
| 6 | 1 | 7 | 28 | 84 | 210 | 462 |

$b(n, 1)=1$

$$
\begin{equation*}
b(n, 1)=1 \quad(n=1,2,3, \cdots), \tag{2.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

in agreement with (2.9). Assume that (2.9) holds for $n=1,2, \cdots, m$ and $1 \leq k \leq n$. Then by (2.7), for $k \leq m$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
b(m+1, k)=\sum_{j=1}^{k} b(m, j) & =\sum_{j=1}^{k}\binom{m+j-1}{j-1}=\sum_{j=1}^{k}\binom{m+j-1}{m} \\
& =\binom{m+k}{m+1}=\binom{m+k}{k-1} .
\end{aligned}
$$

On the other hand, by (2.8),

$$
\begin{aligned}
b(m+1, m+1) & =\sum_{j=1}^{m} b(m, j)+2 b(m, m) \\
& =\sum_{j=1}^{m}\binom{m+j-1}{j-1}+2\binom{2 m-1}{m-1} \\
& =\binom{2 m}{m-1}+\binom{2 m}{m}=\binom{2 m+1}{m}
\end{aligned}
$$

This evidently completes the proof of (2.9).
Returning to (2.4), it is evident that
(2.11)

$$
f(n, k)=b(n, k)-2 b(n, k-1) \quad(1 \leq k \leq n)
$$

Therefore, by (2.9),

$$
\begin{equation*}
f(n, k)=\binom{n+k-1}{k-1}-2\binom{n+k-2}{k-2}=\frac{n-k+1}{n}\binom{n+k-2}{n-1} \quad(1 \leq k \leq n) \tag{2.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

In particular, for $k=n$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{n})=\frac{1}{\mathrm{n}}\binom{2 \mathrm{n}-2}{\mathrm{n}-1} \tag{2.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus, by (2.3), the number of sequences that satisfy (1.1) and (1.2) is equal to the Catalan number

$$
\begin{equation*}
c(n)=\frac{1}{n+1}\binom{2 n}{n} \tag{2.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

Making use of (2.12), it is easy to verify that

$$
\left|\begin{array}{cc}
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k}) & \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k} \div 1)  \tag{2.15}\\
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}+1, \mathrm{k}) & \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}+1, \mathrm{k}+1)
\end{array}\right|>0
$$

and
(2.16)

$$
\mathrm{f}^{2}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k})>\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k}-1) \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k}+1)
$$

3. Put

$$
\begin{equation*}
C(x)=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c(n) x^{n} . \tag{3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since

$$
\begin{aligned}
(1-4 x)^{\frac{1}{2}} & =\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^{n}\binom{\frac{1}{2}}{n}(4 x)^{n} \\
& =1-2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}\binom{2 n-2}{n-1} x^{n} \\
& =1-2 x \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n+1}\binom{2 n}{n} x^{n}
\end{aligned}
$$

it follows from (2.14) and (3.1) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
C(x)=\frac{1}{2 x}(1-\sqrt{1-4 x}) \tag{3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus
(3.3)

$$
\mathrm{xC}^{2}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{C}(\mathrm{x})-1
$$

which is equivalent to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n}+1)=\sum_{\mathrm{k}=0}^{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{c}(\mathrm{k}) \mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n}-\mathrm{k}) . \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

In a letter to the writer, Dr. Jürg Râtz had inquired about the possibility of proving (3.4) without the use of generating functions. This can be done in the following way. Put

$$
\frac{\left(x+\frac{1}{2}\right)_{n}}{(x)_{n+1}}=\sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{A_{k}}{x+k}
$$

where

$$
(a)_{n}=a(a+1) \cdots(a+n-1)
$$

Then

$$
A_{k}\left[\frac{(x)_{n+1}}{x+k}\right]_{x=-k}=\left(\frac{1}{2}-k\right)
$$

and a little manipulation leads to

$$
2^{2 n_{A}}=\binom{2 k}{k}\binom{2 n-2 k}{n-k}
$$

Thus we have proved the identity

$$
\begin{equation*}
2^{2 n} \frac{\left(x+\frac{1}{2}\right)_{n}}{(x)_{n+1}}=\sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{1}{x+k}\binom{2 k}{k}\binom{2 n-2 k}{n-k} \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

It is easily verified that

$$
\frac{2^{2 n}\left(x+\frac{1}{2}\right)_{n}}{(x)_{n+1}}=\frac{(2 x)_{2 n}}{(x)_{n}(x+1)_{n}}
$$

so that (3.5) becomes

$$
\sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{1}{x+k}\binom{2 k}{k}\binom{2 n-2 k}{n-k}=\frac{(2 x) 2 n}{(x)_{n} \cdot(x+1)_{n}}
$$

In particular, for $x=1$, we have

$$
\sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{1}{k+1}\binom{2 k}{k}\binom{2 n-2 k}{n-k}=\frac{(2 n+1)!}{n!(n+1)!}=\binom{2 n+1}{n}
$$

It follows that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\binom{2 n+2}{n+1} & =2\binom{2 n+1}{n}=\sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{1}{k+1}\binom{2 k}{k}\binom{2 n-2 k}{n-k}+\sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{1}{n-k+1}\binom{2 k}{k}\binom{2 n-2 k}{n-k} \\
& =\sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{n+2}{(k+1)(n-k+1)}\binom{2 k}{k}\binom{2 n-2 k}{n-k}=(n+2) \sum_{k=0}^{n} c_{k} c_{n-k} \quad .
\end{aligned}
$$

This evidently proves (3.4).
4. We now define

$$
\begin{equation*}
F(x, y)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{k=1}^{n} f(n, k) x^{n} y^{k} \tag{4.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then, by (2.1),

$$
\begin{aligned}
F(x, y) & =x y+x \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{k=1}^{n+1} f(n+1, k) x^{n} y^{k} \\
& =x y+x \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{k=1}^{n+1} \sum_{j=1}^{k} f(n, j) x^{n} y^{k} \\
& =x y+x \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{j=1}^{n} f(n, j) x^{n} y^{j} \sum_{k=j}^{n+1} y^{k-j} \\
& =x y+\frac{x}{1-y} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{j=1}^{n} f(n, j) x^{n} y^{j}\left(1-y^{n-j+2}\right) \\
& =x y+\frac{x}{1-y} F(x, y)-\frac{x y^{2}}{1-y} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{j=1}^{n} f(n, j) x^{n} y^{n} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since, by (2.13) and (2.14),

$$
\sum_{j=1}^{n} f(n, j)=f(n+1, n+1)=c(n)
$$

we get

$$
(1-x-y) F(x, y)=x y(1-y)-x y^{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c(n)(x y)^{n}
$$

and therefore
(4.2)

$$
(1-x-y) F(x, y)=x y-x y^{2} C(x y)
$$

Now put
(4.3)

$$
\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})=\sum_{\mathrm{k}=1}^{\infty} \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}+\mathrm{k}, \mathrm{k}) \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{n}+\mathrm{k}} \quad(\mathrm{n} \geq 0)
$$

Then

$$
F(x, y)=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} f(n+k, k) x^{n+k} y^{k}=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} y^{-n} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} f(n+k, k)(x y)^{n+k}
$$

so that
(4.4)

$$
F(x, y)=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} y^{-n} F_{n}(x y)
$$

It follows from (4.2) and (4.4), with x replaced by $\mathrm{xy}^{-1}$, that

$$
\left(1-x y^{-1}-y\right) \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} y^{-n} F_{n}(x)=x-x y C(x)
$$

or preferably

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(1-y+x y^{2}\right) \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} y^{n} F_{n}(x)=x C(x)-x y \tag{4.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Comparison of coefficients yields
(4.6)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{F}_{0}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{xC}(\mathrm{x})-\mathrm{F}_{1}(\mathrm{x})+\mathrm{F}_{0}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{x}, \\
& \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})-\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}-1}(\mathrm{x})+\mathrm{xF}_{\mathrm{n}-2}(\mathrm{x})=0
\end{aligned} \quad(\mathrm{n} \geq 2) .
$$

Thus

$$
F_{1}(x)=F_{0}(x)-x=x C(x)-x=x^{2} C^{2}(x)
$$

by (3.3). Next

$$
F_{2}(x)=F_{1}(x)-x F_{0}(x)=x^{2} C(x)(C(x)-1)=x^{3} C^{3}(x)
$$

Generally we have
(4.7)

$$
\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{n}+1} \mathrm{C}^{\mathrm{n}+1}(\mathrm{x})
$$

as is easily proved by induction, using (4.6).
Clearly (4.7) implies
(4.8)

$$
F_{n}(x)=x C(x) F_{n-1}(x) \quad(n \geq 1)
$$

Since

$$
x C(x)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f(n, n) x^{n}
$$

it follows from (4.8) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
f(n+k, k)=\sum_{i=1}^{k} f(j, j) f(n+k-j, k-j+1) \quad(n \geq 1) \tag{4.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

When $\mathrm{n}=1$, (4.9) reduces to (3.4).
If we define

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{n}(x)=\sum_{k=1}^{n} f(n, k) x^{k} \tag{4.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
(1-x) f_{n}(x) & =\sum_{k=1}^{n}\{f(n, k)-f(n, k-1)\} x^{k}-f(n, n) x^{n+1} \\
& =\sum_{k=1}^{n-1} f(n-1, k) x^{k}-f(n, n) x^{n+1}
\end{aligned}
$$

so that
(4.11)

$$
(1-x) f_{n}(x)=f_{n-1}(x)-f(n, n) x^{n+1}
$$

By iteration of (4.11),

$$
\begin{gathered}
(1-x)^{2} f_{n}(x)=f_{n-2}(x)-f(n-1, n-1) x^{n}-f(n, n) x^{n}(1-x), \\
(1-x)^{3} f_{n}(x)=f_{n-3}(x)-f(n-2, n-2) x^{n-1}-f(n-1, n-1) x^{n}(1-x)-f(n, n) x^{n+1}(1-x)^{2}
\end{gathered}
$$

and generally

$$
\begin{equation*}
(1-x)^{k_{f}}(x)=f_{n-k}(x)-\sum_{j=0}^{k-1} f(n-j, n-j) x^{n-j+1}(1-x)^{k-j-1} \tag{4.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

In particular, for $\mathrm{k}=\mathrm{n}-1$, Eq. (4.12) becomes

$$
(1-x)^{n-1} f_{n}(x)=x-\sum_{j=0}^{n-2} f(n-j, n-j) x^{n-j+1}(1-x)^{n-j-2}
$$

so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
(1-x)^{n_{f}}{ }_{n}(x)=x-\sum_{j=1}^{n} f(j, j) x^{j+1}(1-x)^{j-1} \tag{4.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

For example, for $\mathrm{n}=3$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
(1-x)^{3}\left(x+2 x^{2}+2 x^{3}\right) & =x-x^{2}-x^{3}-x^{4}+4 x^{5}-2 x^{6} \\
& =x-x^{2}-x^{3}(1-x)-2 x^{4}(1-x)^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

If we put

$$
\begin{equation*}
G_{n}(x)=x-\sum_{j=1}^{n} f(j, j) x^{j+1}(1-x)^{j-1} \tag{4.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

(4.13) becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
(1-x)^{n_{f}}(x)=G_{n}(x) \tag{4.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

We shall show that (4.15) characterizes the $f(n, k)$ in the following sense. Let

$$
\left(a_{1}, a_{2}, a_{3}, \ldots\right)
$$

be a sequence of numbers such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{n}(x)=x-\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{j} x^{j+1}(1-x)^{j-1} \tag{4.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

is divisible by $(1-x)^{n}$ for $n=1,2,3, \cdots$. Define $g_{n}(x)$ by means of

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{n}(x)=(1-x)^{n} g_{n}(x) \tag{4.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

so that $g_{n}(x)$ is a polynomial of degree $n$. We shall show that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{g}_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x}) \quad(\mathrm{n}=1,2,3, \cdots) \tag{4.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $n=1$, it follows from (4.16) and (4.17) that $a_{1}=1$, $g_{1}(x)=x$. For $n=2$ we have

$$
x-x^{2}-a_{2} x^{3}(1-x)=(1-x)^{2} g_{2}(x),
$$

so that $a_{2}=1, g_{2}(x)=1+x$. For $n=3$ we have

$$
x-x^{2}-x^{3}(1-x)-a_{3} x^{4}(1-x)^{2}=(1-x)^{3} g_{3}(x)
$$

which gives

$$
a_{3}=2, \quad g_{3}(x)=1+2 x+2 x^{2}
$$

It follows from (4.16) that

$$
A_{n-1}(x)-A_{n}(x)=a_{n} x^{n+1}(1-x)^{n-1}
$$

so that, by (4.17),

$$
(1-x)^{n-1} g_{n-1}(x)-(1-x)^{n} g_{n}(x)=a_{n} x^{n+1}(1-x)^{n-1}
$$

Thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
g_{n-1}(x)-(1-x) g_{n}(x)=a_{n} x^{n+1} \tag{4.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

On the other hand, by (4.11),

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{n-1}(x)-(1-x) f_{n}(x)=f(n, n) x^{n+1} \tag{4.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now assume that (4.18) holds for $n=1,2, \cdots, m-1$. Then by (4.19) and (4.20) we have

$$
(1-x)\left[f_{m}(x)-g_{m}(x)\right]=\left[a_{m}-f(m, m)\right] x^{m+1}
$$

This implies

$$
\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{m}}=\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{~m}, \mathrm{~m}), \quad \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{m}}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{g}_{\mathrm{m}}(\mathrm{x})
$$

thus completing the proof of (4.18).
In the next place, we have, by (4.13),

$$
\begin{aligned}
f_{n}(x) & =x(1-x)^{-n}-\sum_{j=1}^{n} f(j, j) x^{j+1}(1-x)^{-n+j-1} \\
& =x \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\left(\begin{array}{c}
n+\frac{k}{k}-1
\end{array}\right) x^{k}-\sum_{j=1}^{n} f(j, j) x^{j+1} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\binom{n-j+k}{k} x^{k} \\
& =x \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}(n+k-1) x^{k}-\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x^{k+1} \sum_{\substack{j=1 \\
j \leq k}}^{n}\binom{n-2 j+k}{k-j} f(j, j) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Equating coefficients, we get
(4.21)

$$
f(n, k+1)=\binom{n+k-1}{k}-\sum_{j=1}^{k}\binom{n-2 j+k}{k-j} f(j, j) \quad(0 \leq k \leq n)
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{j=1}^{n}\binom{n-2 j+k}{k-j} f(j, j)=\binom{n+k-1}{k} \quad(k \geq n) \tag{4.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

In particular, for $k=n$, (4.22) becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{j=1}^{n}\binom{2 n-2 j}{n-j} f(j, j)=\binom{2 n-1}{n-1}=\frac{1}{2}\binom{2 n}{n} \quad(n \geq 1) \tag{4.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then

$$
\frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\binom{2 n}{n} x^{n}=\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} f(j, j) x^{j} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\binom{2 n}{n} x^{n}
$$

Since

$$
(1-4 x)^{-\frac{1}{2}}=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\binom{2 n}{n} x^{n}
$$

it follows that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} f(j, j) x^{j} & =\frac{1}{2}(1-4 x)^{\frac{1}{2}}\left\{(1-4 x)^{-\frac{1}{2}}-1\right\} \\
& =\frac{1}{2}\left\{1-(1-4 x)^{\frac{1}{2}}\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus we have obtained another proof of (3.2).
We can also prove (3.2) - or the equivalent formula (3.4) - directly from the definition of $f(n, k)$. Consider the sequence $\left(a_{1}, a_{2}, \cdots, a_{n+1}\right)$ with

$$
1=a_{1} \leq a_{2} \leq \cdots \leq a_{n+1}=n ; \quad a_{i} \leq i \quad(i=1,2, \cdots, n)
$$

Let $k$ be the largest integer such that $a_{k}=k$. Clearly $k \leq n$ and $a_{k+1}=k$. Now break the given sequence into two subsequences

$$
\left(a_{1}, \cdots, a_{k}\right), \quad\left(a_{k+1}, \cdots, a_{n+1}\right)
$$

Put

$$
b_{j}=a_{k+j}-k+1 \quad(j=1,2, \cdots, n-k+1)
$$

Then

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{c}
1=b_{1} \leq b_{2} \leq \cdots \leq b_{n-k+1}=n-k+1 ; \\
b_{j} \leq j \quad(j=1,2, \cdots, n-k+1)
\end{array}\right.
$$

It follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}+1, \mathrm{n})=\sum_{\mathrm{k}=1}^{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{k}, \mathrm{k}) \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}-\mathrm{k}+1, \mathrm{n}-\mathrm{k}+1) \tag{4.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since

$$
\mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n})=\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}+1, \mathrm{n})=\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}+1, \mathrm{n}+1)
$$

(4.24) reduces to

$$
c(n)=\sum_{k=1}^{n} c(k) c(n-k)
$$

More generally consider the sequence $\left(a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{n+1}\right)$ with

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{c}
1=a_{1} \leq a_{2} \leq \cdots \leq a_{n+1}=m \leq n \\
a_{i} \leq i
\end{array} \quad(i=1,2, \cdots, n)\right.
$$

As above let $k$ be the greatest integer such that $a_{k}=k$. Then $k \leq m \leq n$ and $a_{k+1}=k$. Break the given sequence into two pieces:

$$
\left(a_{1}, \cdots, a_{k}\right), \quad\left(a_{k+1}, \cdots, a_{n+1}\right)
$$

and put

$$
b_{j}=a_{k+j}-k+1 \quad(j=1,2, \cdots, n-k+1)
$$

Then

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{c}
1=b_{1} \leq b_{2} \leq \cdots \leq b_{n-k+1}=m-k+1 \\
b_{j} \leq j \quad(j=1,2, \cdots, n-k+1)
\end{array}\right.
$$

It follows that
(4.25)

$$
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}+1, \mathrm{~m})=\sum_{\mathrm{k}=1}^{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{k}, \mathrm{k}) \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}-\mathrm{k}+1, \mathrm{~m}-\mathrm{k}+1) .
$$

Replacing $\mathrm{n}+1$ by $\mathrm{r}+\mathrm{m}$, (4.25) becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{r}+\mathrm{m}, \mathrm{~m})=\sum_{\mathrm{k}=1}^{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{k}, \mathrm{k}) \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{r}+\mathrm{m}-\mathrm{k}, \mathrm{~m}-\mathrm{k}+1) \tag{4.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

This furnishes another proof of (4.9).
5. We now consider the following generalization of $f(n, k)$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k}, \mathrm{q})=\sum \mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{a}_{1}+\mathrm{a}_{2}+\cdots+\mathrm{a}_{n}} \tag{5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the summation is over all $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{n}$ that satisfy

$$
\begin{equation*}
1=a_{1} \leq a_{2} \leq \cdots \leq a_{n}=k \tag{5.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{i} \leq i \quad(i=1,2, \cdots, n) \tag{5.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

It is clear that $f(n, k, 1)=f(n, k)$.
It follows at once from the definition that

$$
\begin{equation*}
f(n, k, q)=q^{k} \sum_{j=1}^{k} f(n-1, j, q) \tag{5.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $f(n-1, n, q)=0$. From (5.4) we get

$$
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k}, \mathrm{q})=\mathrm{qf}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k}-1, \mathrm{q})+\mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}-1, \mathrm{k}, \mathrm{q}) .
$$

Making use of either (5.4) or (5.5) we can compute the following table.

| $n$ | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | $q$ |  |  |  |  |
| 2 | $q^{2}$ | $q^{3}$ |  |  |  |
| 3 | $q^{3}$ | $q^{4}+q^{5}$ | $q^{5}+q^{6}$ |  |  |
| 4 | $q^{4}$ | $q^{5}+q^{6}+q^{7}$ | $q^{6}+q^{7}+2 q^{8}+q^{9}$ | $q^{7}+q^{8}+2 q^{9}+q^{10}$ |  |
| 5 | $q^{5}$ | $q^{6}+q^{7}+q^{8}+q^{9}$ | $q^{7}+q^{8}+2 q^{9}+2 q^{10}+2 q^{11}$ |  |  |
| $+q^{12}$ | 8 <br> $q^{8}+q^{9}+2 q^{10}+3 q^{11}$ <br> $+3 q^{12}+3 q^{13}+q^{14}$ | $q^{9}+q^{10}+2 q^{11}+3 q^{12}$ <br> $+3 q^{14}+q^{15}$ |  |  |  |

It is evident that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}, 1, \mathrm{q})=\mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{n}} \quad(\mathrm{n}=1,2,3, \cdots) \tag{5.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

and
(5.7)

$$
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{n}, \mathrm{q})=\mathrm{qf}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{n}-1, \mathrm{q}) .
$$

Also, by (5.4), the sum

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{q})=\sum \lambda^{\mathrm{a}_{1}+\mathrm{a}_{2}+\cdots+\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{n}}} \tag{5.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

where now
(5.9)
$1 \leq a_{1} \leq a_{2} \leq \cdots \leq a_{n} \leq n ; \quad a_{i} \leq i$,
satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{q})=\mathrm{q}^{-\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}+1, \mathrm{n}, \mathrm{q})=\mathrm{q}^{-\mathrm{n}-1} \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}+1, \mathrm{n}+1, \mathrm{q}) . \tag{5.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

It is also easily verified that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}, 2, \mathrm{q})=\mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{n}+1} \frac{1-\mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{n}-1}}{1-\mathrm{q}} . \tag{5.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

6. It is convenient to consider the polynomial $a_{n}(x, q)$ defined by means of

$$
\begin{equation*}
\text { (a) }_{n+1} a_{n}(x, q)=1-x \sum_{k=0}^{n} a(k, k, q)(q x)^{k}(x)_{k} \text {, } \tag{6.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where
(6.2)

$$
(x)_{n}=(1-x)(1-q x) \cdots\left(1-q^{n-1} x\right), \quad(x)_{0}=1
$$

The definition (6.1) may be compared with (4.13).
For $\mathrm{n}=0$, (6.1) becomes

$$
(1-x) a_{0}(x, q)=1-x a(0,0, q)
$$

so that

$$
a(0,0, q)=1, \quad a_{0}(x, q)=1
$$

For $\mathrm{n}=1$ we have

$$
(1-x)(1-q x) a_{1}(x, q)=1-x a(0,0, q)-q x^{2}(1-x) a(1,1, q)
$$

which implies

$$
a(1,1, q)=q, \quad a_{1}(x, q)=1+q x .
$$

For $\mathrm{n}=2$ we have

$$
(1-x)(1-q x)\left(1-q^{2} x\right) a_{2}(x, q)=1-x-q^{2} x^{2}(1-x)-q^{2} x^{3}(1-x)(1-q x) a(2,2, q)
$$

This yields

$$
\mathrm{a}(2,2, q)=1+q, \quad a_{2}(x, q)=1+\left(q+q^{2}\right) \mathrm{x}+\left(q^{3}+q^{4}\right) \mathrm{x}^{2}
$$

We now show that (6.1) uniquely determines $a(n, n, q)$ and $a_{n}(x, q)$. Clearly (6.1) implies

$$
(x)_{n+1} a_{n}(x, q)=(x)_{n} a_{n-1}(x, q)-x a(n, n, q)(q x)^{n}(x)_{n} \text {, }
$$

or

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(1-q^{n} x\right) a_{n}(x, q)=a_{n-1}(x, q)-q^{n} a(n, n, q) x^{n+1} \tag{6.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $\mathrm{x}=\mathrm{q}^{-\mathrm{n}}$ this becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
a(n, n, q)=q^{n} a_{n-1}\left(q^{-n}, q\right) \tag{6.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Substitution from (6.4) in (6.2) shows that $a_{n}(x, q)$ is uniquely determined and is of degree $n$ in $x$. We may accordingly put

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{n}(x, q)=\sum_{k=0}^{n} a(n, k, q) x^{n} \tag{6.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

thus incidentally justifying the notation $a(n, n, q)$ in (6.1).
It now follows from (6.2) that

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
a(n, k, q)=q^{n} a(n, k-1, q)+a(n-1, k, q)  \tag{6.6}\\
a(n, n, q)=q^{n} a(n, n-1, q)
\end{array}\right.
$$

Iteration of the first of (6.6) leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
a(n, k, q)=\sum_{j=0}^{k} q q^{j n} a(n-1, k-j, q) \tag{6.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

If we put
(6.8)

$$
a(n, k, q)=q^{\frac{1}{2} k(k+1)} b(n, k, q),
$$

(6.6) becomes
(6.9)

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
b(n, k, q)=b(n-1, k, q)+q^{n-k} b(n, k-1, q) \\
b(n, n, q)=b(n, n-1, q)
\end{array}\right.
$$

The following table is easily computed.

| $k$ | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 1 |  |  |  |  |
| 1 | 1 | 1 |  |  |  |
| 2 | 1 | $1+q$ | $1+q$ |  |  |
| 3 | 1 | $1+q+q^{2}$ | $1+2 q+q^{2}+q^{3}$ | $1+2 q+q^{2}+q^{3}$ |  |
| 4 | 1 | $1+q+q^{2}+q^{3}$ | $1+2 q+2 q^{2}+2 q^{3}$ <br> $+q^{4}+q^{5}$ | $1+3 q+3 q^{2}+3 q^{3}+2 q^{4}$ <br> $+q^{5}+q^{6}$ | $1+3 q+3 q^{2}+3 q^{3}+2 q^{4}$ |
| $+q^{5}+q^{6}$ |  |  |  |  |  |

Comparison with the table for $\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k}, \mathrm{q})$ suggests that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{n}+1, \mathrm{k}+1, q)=q^{(\mathrm{k}+1)(\mathrm{n}+1)-\frac{1}{2} \mathrm{k}(\mathrm{k}+1)} \mathrm{b}\left(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k}, \mathrm{q}^{-1}\right) \tag{6.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

To prove (6.10), substitute from (6.9) in (5.5). We get

$$
\begin{aligned}
q^{(k+1)(n+1)-\frac{1}{2} k(k+1)} b\left(n, k, q^{-1}\right)= & q^{k(n+1)-\frac{1}{2} k(k-1)+1} b\left(n, k-1, q^{-1}\right) \\
& +q^{(k+1) n-\frac{1}{2} k(k+1)+k+1} b\left(n-1, k, q^{-1}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

that is

$$
b\left(n, k, q^{-1}\right)=q^{k-n} b\left(n, k-1, q^{-1}\right)+b\left(n-1, k, q^{-1}\right) .
$$

Replacing $q$ by $q^{-1}$, this becomes

$$
b(n, k, q)=q^{n-k} b(n, k-1, q)+b(n-1, k, q)
$$

which is identical with (6.9). This evidently proves (6.10).
7. It follows from (6.9) that $b(n, k, q)$ is a polynomial of degree $k$ in $q^{n}$. Put

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{b}(\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{k}, \mathrm{q})=\frac{1}{(\mathrm{q})_{\mathrm{k}}} \sum_{\mathrm{s}=0}^{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{c}(\mathrm{k}, \mathrm{~s}) \mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{ns}}, \tag{7.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $c(k, s)=c(k, s, q)$ is independent of $n$. Using (6.9) we get

$$
c(k, s)=-q^{s-k} \frac{1-q^{k}}{1-q^{s}} c(k-1, s-1)
$$

This yields
(7.2) $c(k, s)=(-1)^{s} q^{s(s-k)}\left[\begin{array}{l}k \\ s\end{array}\right] c(k-s)$,
where $c(k-s)=c(k-s, 0)$ and

$$
\left[\begin{array}{c}
\mathrm{k} \\
\mathrm{~s}
\end{array}\right]=\frac{\left(1-\mathrm{q}^{k}\right)\left(1-q^{k-1}\right) \cdots\left(1-q^{k-s+1}\right)}{(1-q)\left(1-q^{2}\right) \cdots\left(1-q^{s}\right)}
$$

Thus (7.1) becomes

$$
b(n, k, q)=\frac{1}{(q)_{k}} \sum_{s=0}^{k}(-1)^{s} q^{s(s-k)}\left[\begin{array}{l}
k  \tag{7.3}\\
s
\end{array}\right] c(k-s) q^{n s} .
$$

By (6.9) and (7.3) we have
$b(j, k+1, q)-b(j-1, k+1, q)=\frac{q^{-k-1}}{(q)} \sum_{s=0}^{k}(-1)^{s} q^{s(s-k)}\left[\begin{array}{l}k \\ s\end{array}\right] c(k-s) q^{j(s+1)} \quad(j>k)$.

Summing over j gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
b(n, k+1, q) & =\frac{q^{-k-1}}{(q)} \sum_{k}^{k}(-1)^{s} q^{s(s-k)}\left[\begin{array}{l}
k \\
s
\end{array}\right] c(k-s) \frac{q^{(k+1)(s+1)}-q^{(n+1)(s+1)}}{1-q^{s+1}} \\
& =\frac{1}{(q)_{k+1}} \sum_{s=0}^{k+1}(-1)^{s} q^{s(s-k-1)}\left[\begin{array}{c}
k+1 \\
s
\end{array}\right] c(k-s+1) q^{n s} \\
& =\frac{1}{(q){ }_{k+1}} \sum_{s=1}^{k+1}(-1)^{s} q^{s(s-1)}\left[\begin{array}{c}
k+1 \\
s
\end{array}\right] c(k-s+1) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Comparison with (7.3) yields

$$
c_{k+1}=-\sum_{s=1}^{k+1}(-1)^{s} q^{s(s-1)}\left[\begin{array}{c}
k+1 \\
s
\end{array}\right] c(k-s+1)
$$

that is,

$$
\sum_{s=0}^{k}(-1)^{s} q^{s(s-1)}\left[\begin{array}{l}
k  \tag{7.4}\\
s
\end{array}\right] c(k-s)=0 \quad(k>0) .
$$

The $c(k)$ are uniquely determined by (7.4) and $c(0)=1$. In particular

$$
c(1)=1, \quad c(2)=1+q-q^{2}, \quad c(3)=1+2 q+2 q^{2}+q^{3}-q^{6} .
$$

To get a generating function for $\mathrm{c}(\mathrm{k})$, put

$$
\begin{equation*}
f(t)=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}(-1)^{k} q^{k(k-1)} t^{k} /(q)_{k} \tag{7.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then, by (7.4),

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c(n) t^{n} /(q)_{n}=\frac{1}{f(t)} \tag{7.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the next place put

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{f(x t)}{f(t)}=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \psi_{n}(x) \frac{t^{n}}{(q)_{n}} \tag{7.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\psi_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{n})=\sum_{\mathrm{s}=0}^{\mathrm{n}}(-1)^{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{q}^{\mathrm{s}(\mathrm{~s}-1)}\left[\begin{array}{l}
\mathrm{n}  \tag{7.8}\\
\mathrm{~s}
\end{array}\right] \mathrm{c}(\mathrm{n}-\mathrm{s}) \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{s}}
$$

In particular, by (7.3),

$$
\begin{equation*}
b(n+k-1, k, q)=\frac{1}{(q)_{k}} \psi_{k}\left(q^{n}\right), \quad b(k, k, q)=\frac{1}{(q)_{k}} \psi_{k}(q) \tag{7.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, by (7.7),

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} b(n+k-1, k, q) t^{k}=\frac{f\left(q^{n} t\right)}{f(t)} \quad(n>0) \tag{7.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

While $f(t)$ resembles the familiar series

$$
\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} t^{n} / q^{n}=\prod_{n=0}^{\infty}\left(1-q^{n} t\right)^{-1}
$$

and

$$
\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^{n} q^{\frac{1}{2} n(n-1)} t^{n} /(q)_{n}=\prod_{n=0}^{\infty}\left(1-q^{n} t\right)
$$

its properties seem to be less simple.
It follows from (7.5) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{t})-\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{qt})+\mathrm{tf}\left(\mathrm{q}^{2} \mathrm{t}\right)=0 . \tag{7.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Repeated application of (7.11) leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
q^{\frac{1}{2} n(n-1)} t^{n} f\left(q^{n+1} t\right)=-A_{n}(t) f(t)+B_{n}(t) f(q t) \quad(n>0) \tag{7.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $A_{n+1}(t)=B_{n}(q t)$ and

$$
B_{n}(t)=\sum_{2 s \leq n}(-1)^{s} q^{s(s-1)}\left[\begin{array}{c}
n-s  \tag{7.13}\\
s
\end{array}\right] t^{s} .
$$

REFERENCES

1. R. Alter, "Some Remarks and Results on Catalan Numbers," Proceedings of the Second Louisiana Conference on Combinatories, Graph Theory and Computing, Baton Rouge, 1971, pp. 109-132.
2. J. Bertrand, "Solution d'un probleme," Comptes Rendus Acad. Sciences, Paris, Vol. 105 (1887), p. 369.
3. L. Carlitz and J. Riordan, "Two-Element Lattice Permutation Numbers and their qGeneralization, " Duke Math. Journal, Vol. 31 (1964), pp. 371-388.
4. L. Carlitz, D. P. Roselle and R. A. Scoville, "Some Remarks on Ballot-Type Sequences of Positive Integers, " Journal of Combinatorial Theory, Vol. 11 (1971), pp. 258-271.
5. R. D. Fray and D. P. Roselle, "Weighted Lattice Paths," Pacific Journal of Mathematics, Vol. 37 (1971), pp. 85-96.
6. P. A. MacMahon, Combinatorial Analysis, Vol. 1, Cambridge, 1915.
7. S. G. Mohanty, "Some Properties of Compositions and Their Application to the Ballot Problem," Canadian Math. Bulletin, Vol. 8 (1965), pp. 359-372.
8. S. G. Mohanty and T. V. Narayana, "Some Properties of Composition and the Application to Probability and Statistics I, " Biometrische Zeitschrift, Vol. 3 (1961), pp. 252258.
9. L. Moser and W. Zayachkowski, "Lattice Paths with Diagonal Steps," Scripta Mathematica, Vol. 26 (1963), pp. 223-229.
10. E. Netto, Lehrbuch der Combinatorik, Teubner, Leipzig and Berlin, 1927.
11. John Riordan, "A Note on a q-extension of-Ballot Numbers," Journal of Combinatorial Analysis, Vol. 4 (1968), pp. 191-193.


Renewal notices, normally sent out to subscribers in November or December, are now sent by bulk mail. This means that if your address has changed the notice will not be forwarded to you. If you have a change of address, please notify:

Brother Alfred Brousseau
St. Mary's College
St. Mary's College, Calif.

We have therefore

Now

$$
\begin{equation*}
F_{a^{k}}(x)=F_{a^{k+1}}(x)+\left(x^{2^{k+1}}+x^{u_{k+2}}\right) F_{a^{k+2}}(x) \tag{6.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
B(x)=x^{2} F_{a^{2}}(x)
$$

so that $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{a}^{2}}(\mathrm{x})$ is rationally related to $\mathrm{A}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{a}}(\mathrm{x})$. Then by (6.17) the same is true of $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{a}^{2}}(\mathrm{x})$ and so on.

We may state
Theorem 6.3. For arbitrary $w$, the function $F_{w}(x)$ is rationally related to $A(x)$, that is, there exist polynomials $P_{w}(x), Q_{w}(x), R_{w}(x)$ such that

$$
P_{W}(x) F_{w}(x)=Q_{w}(x) A(x)+R_{w}(x)
$$

It seems plausible that $A(x)$ and $D_{1}(x)$ are not rationally related but we have been unable to prove this.

## REFERENCES

1. L. Bieberbach, Lehrbuch der Funktionentheorie, Vol. 2, Lepizig and Berlin, 1931.
2. L. Carlitz, V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., and Richard Scoville, "Fibonacci Representations," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 10, No. 1 (1972), pp. 1-28.
3. L. Carlitz, V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., and Richard Scoville, "Lucas Representations," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 10, No. 1 (1972), pp. 29-42.
4. L. Carlitz, V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., and Richard Scoville, "Fibonacci Representations of Higher Order," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 10, No. 1 (1972), pp. 43-69.
5. L. Carlitz, V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., and Richard Scoville, "Fibonacci Representations of Higher Order - II," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 10, No. 1 (1972), pp. 71-80.
6. L. Carlitz, V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., and Richard Scoville, "Pellian Representations," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 10, No. 5 (1972), pp. 449-488.
[Continued from page 526.]
it is clear that we have proved (5).
As for (2), we have

$$
a L_{n}-L_{n+1}=b^{n}(a-b)=b^{n} \sqrt{5}
$$

For $n \geq 4$

$$
\left|\mathrm{b}^{\mathrm{n}} \sqrt{5}\right| \leq \mathrm{b}^{4} \sqrt{5}=\frac{1}{2}(7-3 \sqrt{5}) \sqrt{5}<\frac{1}{2}
$$

## REFERENCE

1. R. Anaya and J. Crump, "A Generalized Greatest Integer Function Theorem," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 10 (1972), pp. 207-211.


# SOME THEOREMS ON COMPLETENESS 

V. E. HOGGATT, JR., and BOB CHOW *<br>San Jose State University, San Jose, California

## 1. INTRODUCTION

The notion of completeness was introduced in [1].
Definition. A sequence of positive integers, A, is "complete" if and only if every positive integer, $N$, is the sum of a subsequence of $A$. The theorem of Brown [2] gives a necessary and sufficient condition for completeness.

Theorem 1. A sequence of monotonic increasing positive integers, A, is "complete" if and only if:

$$
a_{1}=1 \quad \text { and } \quad a_{n+1} \leq 1+\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_{k} .
$$

Corollary. As an easy consequence of Theorem 1, the sequence $a_{n}=2^{n-1}, n=1,2$, $3, \cdots$ is complete, since $2^{\mathrm{n}+1}=1+\left(2^{\mathrm{n}}+\cdots+2+1\right)$, a well known result.

Theorem 2. The Fibonacci Sequence is complete.
Proof. The identity

$$
F_{n+2}-1=\sum_{k=1}^{n} F_{k}
$$

gives us

$$
F_{n+1} \leq 1+\sum_{k=1}^{n} F_{k}=F_{n+2}
$$

since

$$
F_{n+2}=F_{n+1}+F_{n} .
$$

## 2. ANOTHER SUFFICIENT CONDITION

Theorem 3. If (i) $a_{1}=1$, (ii) $a_{n+1} \geq a_{n}$, (iii) $a_{n+1} \leq 2 a_{n}$, then sequence $A$ is complete.

$$
\text { Proof. } \quad \begin{aligned}
a_{n+1} & \leq a_{n}+a_{n} \\
& \leq a_{n}+a_{n-1}+a_{n-1} \\
& \leq a_{n}+a_{n-1}+\cdots+a_{1}+a_{1}
\end{aligned}
$$

[^5]by repeated use of conditions (ii) and (iii), thus
$$
a_{n+1} \leq 1+\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_{k}
$$
since (i) gives $a_{1}=1$.
Corollary. The Fibonacci sequence is complete. $\mathrm{F}_{1}=1, \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{n}+1} \leq 2 \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{n}}$ and $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}+1} \geq \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}$. Theorem 4. The sequence $\left\{1, p_{n}\right\}$ is complete, where $p_{n}$ is the $n$th prime. Proof. By Bertrand's postulate there is a prime in [ $\mathrm{n}, 2 \mathrm{n}$ ] for $\mathrm{n} \geq 1$.
Now $p_{n}<p_{n+1} \leq 2 p_{n}$. Thus by Theorem 3, Theorem 4 is proved.
Theorem 5. The sequence $\left\{1, p_{n}\right\}$ is complete even when an arbitrary prime $\geq 7$ is removed.

Proof. By Sierpiñski's Theorem VII in [3], we have for $n>5$ there exists at least two primes between $n$ and $2 n$.

Thus

$$
\mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{n}}<\mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{n}+1}<\mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{n}+2}<2 \mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{n}} .
$$

Clearly, if some $p_{n+1}$ is deleted, then Theorem 3 is still valid. Thus Theorem 5.
Theorem 6. The sequence $\left\{1, p_{n}\right\}$ remains complete even if for $n>5$ we remove an infinite subsequence of primes no two of which are consecutive.

## 3. COMPLETENESS OF FIBONACCI POWERS

Theorem 7. The sequence of $2^{m-1}$ copies of $F_{k}^{m}$ is complete. Proof.

$$
\frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}+1}^{\prime}}{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}} \leq 2 \quad \text { for } \quad \mathrm{n} \geq 3
$$

and

$$
\left(\frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}+1}}{\bar{F}_{\mathrm{n}}^{\prime}}\right)^{4} \leq 2^{3} \quad \text { for } \quad \mathrm{n} \geq 3
$$

Thus

$$
\left(\frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}+1}}{\mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{n}}}\right)^{\mathrm{m}} \leq 2^{\mathrm{m}-1} \quad \text { for } \quad \mathrm{m} \geq 4, \quad \mathrm{n} \geq 3
$$

Now:

$$
\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}+1}^{\mathrm{m}} \leq 2^{\mathrm{m}-1} \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{n}}^{\mathrm{m}} \leq 1+2^{\mathrm{m}-1} \sum_{\mathrm{k}=1}^{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{k}}^{\mathrm{m}}
$$

For $m=1$, the theorem is true by Theorem 2. For $m=2$, we have

$$
\mathrm{F}_{1}^{2}+\mathrm{F}_{2}^{2}+\cdots+\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}^{2}=\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{n}+1}
$$

shows that one copy is not enough.
Let $a_{2 n}=a_{2 n+1}=F_{n}^{2}$, then clearly

$$
a_{2 n+1} \leq 1+\sum_{k=1}^{2 n} a_{k},
$$

since

$$
\begin{gathered}
a_{2 n+1}=a_{2 n} \\
\sum_{k=1}^{2 n} a_{k}=2\left(F_{1}^{2}+F_{2}^{2}+\cdots+F_{n}^{2}\right)=2 F_{n} F_{n+1}
\end{gathered}
$$

Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{a}_{2 \mathrm{n}+2} & =\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}+1}^{2} \\
& \leq 1+2 \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{n}+1}
\end{aligned}
$$

since

$$
\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}+1} \leq 2 \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{n}}
$$

Therefore by Theorem 1 it is complete. For $m=3$, four copies of $F_{n}^{3}$ is complete from [5]. Theorem 7 is proved. See Brown [4].

In [5] is the following Theorem which we cite without proof:
Theorem 8. If any $a_{n}, n \leq 6$, is deleted from the two copies of the Fibonacci Squares, the sequence remains complete, while if $n \geq 7$, the sequence becomes incomplete.

In [5] the following theorem is given:
Theorem 9. If four copies of $F_{n}^{3}$ forms a sequence, then the sequence remains complete if $F_{k}^{3}$ is removed for $k$ odd and becomes incomplete if $F_{k}^{3}$ is removed for $k$ even.

The following conjecture was given by O'Connell in [5]:
Theorem 10. If $\mathrm{m} \geq 4$, the $2^{\mathrm{m}-1}$ copies of $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}^{\mathrm{m}}$ remains complete even if a $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{k}}^{\mathrm{m}}$ is removed.

Proof. Since $F_{n+1}^{m} \leq 2^{m-1} F_{n}^{m}$ for $n \geq 3 ; m \geq 4$, then

$$
F_{n+k+1}^{m} \leq 2^{m-1} F_{n+k}^{m} \leq 1+2^{m-1} \sum_{s=1}^{n+k} F_{s}^{m}-F_{n}^{m}
$$

From Theorem 8, the sequence is complete up to terms using $2^{m-1} F_{n}^{m}$ clearly if we delete one $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{k}}^{\mathrm{m}}$ the first possible difficulty appears at $\mathrm{k}=1$ above. Clearly this causes no trouble for $k \geq 0$. The result follows and the proof of Theorem 10 is finished.

Theorem 11. If $m=4 k$, then the sequence of $2^{m-1}$ copies of $F_{n}^{k}$ remains complete even if $2^{\mathrm{k}-1}$ of the $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}^{\mathrm{m}}$ are deleted.

Proof.

$$
\left(\frac{F_{n+1}}{\bar{F}_{n}}\right) \leq 2 \quad \text { for } \quad n \geq 3
$$

then

$$
\begin{aligned}
F_{n+1}^{4 k} & \left.\leq 2^{3 k} F_{n}^{F_{n+1}}\right)^{4 k}=F_{n}^{4 k}+\left(2^{3 k}-1\right) F_{n}^{4 k} \\
& \leq 2^{3 k} F_{n-1}^{4 k}+2^{k-1}\left(2^{3 k}-1\right) F_{n}^{4 k} \\
& \leq 2^{4 k-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} F_{i}^{4 k}+\left(2^{4 k-1}-2^{k-1}\right) F_{n}^{4 k} \\
& \leq 1+2^{4 k-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n} F_{i}^{4 k}-2^{k-1} F_{n}^{4 k}
\end{aligned}
$$

then let $\mathrm{m}=4 \mathrm{k}$;

$$
\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}+1}^{\mathrm{m}} \leq 1+2^{\mathrm{m}-1} \sum_{\mathrm{i}=1}^{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{i}}^{\mathrm{m}}-2^{\mathrm{k}-1} \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{n}}^{\mathrm{m}}
$$

Thus $2^{\mathrm{k}-1}$ copies of $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}^{\mathrm{m}}$ can be deleted without loss of completeness. Further: Theorem 12.

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{k} \alpha_{i} F_{s_{i}}^{m}
$$

can be deleted without loss of completeness, and where $\alpha_{i} \leq 2^{\mathrm{k}-1}$

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{k} \alpha_{i} F_{s_{i}}^{m} \leq 2^{k-1} F_{s_{k}}^{m}
$$

Proof. As a consequence of Theorem 11, we have

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{\mathrm{k}} \alpha_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{s}_{\mathrm{i}}}^{\mathrm{m}} \leq 2^{\mathrm{k}-1} \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{s}_{\mathrm{k}}}^{\mathrm{m}} \quad \alpha_{\mathrm{i}} \leq 2^{\mathrm{k}-1}
$$

Thus:

$$
\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}+1}^{\mathrm{m}} \leq 1+2^{\mathrm{m}-1} \sum_{\mathrm{i}=1}^{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{i}}^{\mathrm{m}}-\sum_{\mathrm{i}=1}^{\mathrm{k}} \alpha_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{s}_{\mathrm{i}}}^{\mathrm{m}}
$$

[Continued on page 560.]

# FIBONACCI AND LUCAS TRIANGLES 

## V. E. HOGGATT, JR., MARJORIE BICKNELL, and ELLEN L. KING San Jose State University, San Jose, California

## 1. INTRODUCTION

We first define four sequences of polynomials and lay out two fundamental identities. Let
(a)

$$
\mathrm{f}_{0}(\mathrm{x})=0, \quad \mathrm{f}_{1}(\mathrm{x})=1, \quad \text { and } \quad \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{n}+2}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{xf}_{\mathrm{n}+1}(\mathrm{x})+\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})
$$

These are the Fibonacci polynomials, and $f_{n}(1)=F_{n}$. Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{0}(x)=2, \quad L_{1}(x)=x, \quad \text { and } \quad L_{n+2}(x)=x L_{n+1}(x)+L_{n}(x) \tag{b}
\end{equation*}
$$

which are the Lucas polynomials. It is easy to show that

$$
L_{n}(x)=f_{n+1}(x)+f_{n-1}(x), \quad L_{n}^{2}(x)-\left(x^{2}+4\right) f_{n}^{2}(x)=(-1)^{n} 4, \quad \text { and } \quad L_{n}(1)=L_{n}
$$

These are two well known polynomial sequences which have been much discussed in these pages. Both enjoy Binet forms. Let $\lambda^{2}-\mathrm{x} \lambda-1=0$ have roots

$$
\lambda_{1}=\frac{x+\sqrt{x^{2}+4}}{2} \quad \text { and } \quad \lambda_{2}=\frac{x-\sqrt{x^{2}+4}}{2} .
$$

Then

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})=\frac{\lambda_{1}^{\mathrm{n}}-\lambda_{2}^{\mathrm{n}}}{\lambda_{1}-\lambda_{2}} \quad \text { and } \quad \mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})=\lambda_{1}^{\mathrm{n}}+\lambda_{2}^{\mathrm{n}}, \\
\lambda_{1}^{\mathrm{n}}=\frac{\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})+\sqrt{\mathrm{x}^{2}+4} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})}{2} \quad \text { and } \quad \lambda_{2}^{\mathrm{n}}=\frac{\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})-\sqrt{\mathrm{x}^{2}+4} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})}{2}
\end{gathered}
$$

Next we introduce two polynomial sequences closely related to the Chebysheff polynomials of the first and second kind which were introduced in [2]. Let

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{g}_{0}(\mathrm{x})=0, \quad \mathrm{~g}_{1}(\mathrm{x})=1, \quad \text { and } \mathrm{g}_{\mathrm{n}+2}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{x} \mathrm{~g}_{\mathrm{n}+1}(\mathrm{x})-\mathrm{g}_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x}), \\
& \mathrm{h}_{0}(\mathrm{x})=2, \quad \mathrm{~h}_{1}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{x},
\end{aligned} \text { and } \mathrm{h}_{\mathrm{n}+2}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{x} \mathrm{~h}_{\mathrm{n}+1}(\mathrm{x})-\mathrm{h}_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x}) .
$$

It is easy to establish

$$
h_{n}^{2}(x)-\left(x^{2}-4\right) g_{n}^{2}(x)=4 \quad \text { and } \quad h_{n}(x)=g_{n+1}(x)+g_{n-1}(x)
$$

and if $\lambda^{2}-\mathrm{x} \lambda+1=0$ has roots

$$
\lambda_{1}^{*}(x)=\frac{x+\sqrt{x^{2}-4}}{2} \quad \text { and } \quad \lambda_{2}^{*}(x)=\frac{x-\sqrt{x^{2}-4}}{2}
$$

then, for $x \neq \pm 2$,

$$
\mathrm{g}_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})=\frac{\lambda_{1}^{* \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})-\lambda_{2}^{* \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})}{\lambda_{1}^{*}(\mathrm{x})-\lambda_{2}^{*}(\mathrm{x})} \quad \text { and } \quad \mathrm{h}_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})=\lambda_{1}^{* \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})+\lambda_{2}^{* \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})
$$

while $g_{n}(2)=n$ and $g_{n}(-2)=-n, n=0,1,2, \cdots$. As with Fibonacci polynomials, $g_{n}(x)$ have their coefficients lying along the rising diagonals of Pascal's triangle.

## 2. SUBSTITUTIONS INTO POLYNOMIAL SEQUENCES

## Consider

$$
\lambda_{1}(x)=\frac{x+\sqrt{x^{2}+4}}{2}
$$

for $x$ replaced by $L_{2 n+1}(x)$. From $L_{n}^{2}(x)-\left(x^{2}+4\right) f_{n}^{2}(x)=4(-1)^{n}$ we see that

$$
\lambda_{1}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}+1}(\mathrm{x})\right)=\frac{\mathrm{L}_{2 \mathrm{n}+1}(\mathrm{x})+\sqrt{\mathrm{x}^{2}+4} \mathrm{f}_{2 \mathrm{n}+1}(\mathrm{x})}{2}
$$

which from

$$
\lambda_{1}^{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})=\left[\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})+\sqrt{\mathrm{x}^{2}+4} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})\right] / 2
$$

becomes

$$
\lambda_{1}\left(L_{2 n+1}(x)\right)=\lambda_{1}^{2 n+1}(x)
$$

Similarly,

$$
\lambda_{2}\left(L_{2 n+1}(x)\right)=\lambda_{2}^{2 n+1}(x)
$$

Now let us look at

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{m}}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}+1}(\mathrm{x})\right) & =\frac{\lambda_{1}^{\mathrm{m}}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}+1}(\mathrm{x})\right)-\lambda_{2}^{\mathrm{m}}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}+1}(\mathrm{x})\right)}{\lambda_{1}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}+1}^{(\mathrm{x}))-\lambda_{2}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}+1}(\mathrm{x})\right)}\right.} \\
& =\frac{\lambda_{1}^{\mathrm{m}(2 \mathrm{n}+1)}(\mathrm{x})-\lambda_{2}^{\mathrm{m}(2 \mathrm{n}+1)}(\mathrm{x})}{\lambda_{1}^{2 \mathrm{n}+1}(\mathrm{x})-\lambda_{2}^{2 \mathrm{n}+1}(\mathrm{x})}=\frac{\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{m}(2 \mathrm{n}+1)}(\mathrm{x})}{\mathrm{f}_{2 \mathrm{n}+1}(\mathrm{x})}
\end{aligned}
$$

by dividing numerator and denominator by $\lambda_{1}(x)-\lambda_{2}(x)$ and using the Binet form for the Fibonacci polynomials. We note that since the coefficients of both polynomial sequences $f_{n}(x)$
and $L_{n}(x)$ are integers, then $f_{m}\left(L_{2 n+1}(x)\right)$ is a polynomial and $f_{m(2 n+1)}(x) / f_{2 n+1}(x)$ is a polynomial. Letting $x=1$ shows that $F_{2 n+1} \mid F_{m(2 n+1)}$.

If instead we use $L_{2 n}^{2}(x)-4=\left(x^{2}+4\right) f_{2 n}^{2}(x)$, then

$$
\lambda_{1}^{*}(\mathrm{x})=\frac{\mathrm{x}+\sqrt{\mathrm{x}^{2}-4}}{2}, \quad \lambda_{2}^{*}(\mathrm{x})=\frac{\mathrm{x}-\sqrt{\mathrm{x}^{2}-4}}{2}
$$

becomes

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \lambda_{1}^{*}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})\right)=\frac{\mathrm{L}_{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})+\sqrt{\mathrm{x}^{2}+4} \mathrm{f}_{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})}{2}=\lambda_{1}^{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x}) \\
& \lambda_{2}^{*}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})\right)=\frac{\mathrm{L}_{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})-\sqrt{\mathrm{x}^{2}+4} \mathrm{f}_{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})}{2}=\lambda_{2}^{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})
\end{aligned}
$$

so that

$$
\mathrm{g}_{\mathrm{m}}(\mathrm{x})=\frac{\lambda_{1}^{* \mathrm{~m}}(\mathrm{x})-\lambda_{2}^{* \mathrm{~m}}(\mathrm{x})}{\lambda_{1}^{*}(\mathrm{x})-\lambda_{2}^{*}(\mathrm{x})}
$$

becomes, when $x$ is replaced by $L_{2 n}(x)$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{g}_{\mathrm{m}}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})\right) & =\frac{\lambda_{1}^{\left.* \mathrm{~m}_{\left(\mathrm{L}_{2 \mathrm{n}}\right.}(\mathrm{x})\right)-\lambda_{2}^{* \mathrm{~m}}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})\right)}}{\lambda_{1}^{*}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})\right)-\lambda_{2}^{*}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})\right)} \\
& =\frac{\lambda_{1}^{2 \mathrm{mn}}(\mathrm{x})-\lambda_{2}^{2 \mathrm{mn}}(\mathrm{x})}{\lambda_{1}^{2 \mathrm{n}}-\lambda_{2}^{2 \mathrm{n}}}=\frac{\mathrm{f}_{2 \mathrm{mn}}(\mathrm{x})}{\mathrm{f}_{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})}
\end{aligned}
$$

as before using the Binet form for the Fibonacci polynomials. Again $g_{m}\left(L_{2 n}(x)\right)$ is a polynomial when $x=1, F_{2 n} \mid F_{2 m n}$.

Summarizing,
(A)
(B)

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{f}_{(2 \mathrm{n}+1) \mathrm{m}}(\mathrm{x}) & =\mathrm{f}_{2 \mathrm{n}+1}(\mathrm{x}) \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{m}}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}+1}(\mathrm{x})\right) \\
\mathrm{f}_{2 \mathrm{~nm}}(\mathrm{x}) & =\mathrm{f}_{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x}) \mathrm{g}_{\mathrm{m}}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Using the explicit formulas for the polynomials $f_{n}(x)$ and $g_{n}(x)$, we have

$$
f_{n+1}(x)=\sum_{k=0}^{[n / 2]}(n+1-k) x^{n-2 k}, \quad g_{n+1}(x)=\sum_{k=0}^{[n / 2]}\binom{n+1-k}{k}(-1)^{k} x^{n-2 k}
$$

Then, we can combine (A) and (B) into one formula,

$$
f_{n k}(x)=f_{k}(x) \sum_{j=0}^{[n / 2]}(n-1-j)(-1)^{(k+1)(j+1)} L_{k}^{n-2 j-1}(x)
$$

This justifies the formula reported by Brother Alfred in [3], Table 41, when $\mathrm{x}=3$, but, of course, holds for other x as well.

## 3. THE LUCAS TRIANGLE

The polynomial sequences $L_{n}(x)$ and $h_{n}(x)$ for each $n$ have the same coefficients except those of $h_{n}(x)$ alternate in sign. If we call the coefficient array for the Lucas polynomials the Lucas Triangle, then we can get a result similar to that above as reported for Table 42 in [3]. See also [1], [4], [5], and [6]. First,

$$
\lambda_{1}\left(L_{2 n+1}(x)\right)=\lambda_{1}^{2 n+1}(x) \quad \text { and } \quad \lambda_{2}\left(L_{2 n+1}(x)\right)=\lambda_{2}^{2 n+1}(x)
$$

so that

$$
\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{m}}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}+1}(\mathrm{x})\right)=\lambda_{1}^{(2 \mathrm{n}+1) \mathrm{m}_{(\mathrm{x})}+\lambda_{2}^{(2 \mathrm{n}+1) \mathrm{m}}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{m}(2 \mathrm{n}+1)}(\mathrm{x}) . . . . .}
$$

Next

$$
\lambda_{1}^{*}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})\right)=\lambda_{1}^{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x}) \quad \text { and } \quad \lambda_{2}^{*}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})\right)=\lambda_{2}^{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})
$$

so that

$$
\mathrm{h}_{\mathrm{n}}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})\right)=\lambda_{1}^{2 \mathrm{mn}}(\mathrm{x})+\lambda_{2}^{2 \mathrm{mn}}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{L}_{2 \mathrm{mn}}(\mathrm{x})
$$

This evidently establishes the counterpart for the Lucas polynomials.
We note in passing that $\mathrm{L}_{0}(\mathrm{x})=2, \mathrm{~L}_{1}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{x}$, and from

$$
L_{n+2}(x)=x L_{n+1}(x)+L_{n}(x), \quad L_{2}(x)=x^{2}+2
$$

Thus the $L_{2 n+1}(x)$ are divisible by $x$. This also holds for $h_{2 n+1}(x)$.
Thus,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{L}_{2 \mathrm{~m}+1}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}+1}(\mathrm{x})\right) & =\mathrm{L}_{(2 \mathrm{~m}+1)(2 \mathrm{n}+1)}(\mathrm{x}) \\
\mathrm{h}_{2 \mathrm{~m}+1}\left(\mathrm{~L}_{2 \mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{x})\right) & =\mathrm{L}_{(2 \mathrm{~m}+1)(2 \mathrm{n})}(\mathrm{x})
\end{aligned}
$$

implies that $L_{p}(x) \mid L_{(2 m+1) p}(x)$. Similarly, $f_{p}(x) \mid f_{m p}(x)$. Setting $x=1$ establishes $L_{p} \mid L_{(2 m+1) p}$ and $F_{p} \mid F_{m p}$ for $m \geq 0$.

## 4. SOME OTHER RESULTS

Suppose

$$
f_{n+2}(x)=x f_{n+1}(x)+f_{n}(x) ; \quad f_{0}(x)=0, \quad f_{1}(x)=1
$$

Next let $\mathrm{x}=\alpha$, where $\alpha^{2}=\alpha+1$; then

$$
\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{n}}(\alpha)=\alpha \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{n}}+\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{n}} .
$$

Here we seek recurrences for the sequences $P_{n}$ and $Q_{n}$. Thus

$$
\alpha \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{n}+2}+\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{n}+2}=\alpha\left(\alpha \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{n}+1}+\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{n}+1}\right)+\left(\alpha \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{n}}+\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{n}}\right)
$$

and

$$
\begin{gathered}
P_{n+2}=P_{n+1}+P_{n}+Q_{n+1} \\
Q_{n+2}=P_{n+1}+Q_{n} \\
P_{n+1}=P_{n}+P_{n-1}+Q_{n} \\
P_{n+3}=P_{n+2}+P_{n+1}+Q_{n+2} .
\end{gathered}
$$

Subtracting

$$
P_{n+3}-P_{n+1}=P_{n+2}-P_{n}+P_{n+1}-P_{n-1}+Q_{n+2}-Q_{n}
$$

Thus

$$
P_{n+3}=P_{n+2}+3 P_{n+1}-P_{n}-P_{n-1}
$$

since

$$
Q_{n+2}-Q_{n}=P_{n+1}
$$

whose auxiliary polynomial is

$$
x^{4}=x^{3}+3 x^{2}-x-1
$$

This agrres with the results in [8].
Now, let $\lambda^{2}=x \lambda+1$. Then

$$
f_{n}(\lambda)=\lambda P_{n}+Q_{n},
$$

when $P_{n}$ and $Q_{n}$ are polynomials in $\lambda_{\text {。 }}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\lambda P_{n+2}+Q_{n+2} & =\lambda\left(\lambda P_{n+1}+Q_{n+1}\right)+\lambda P_{n}+Q_{n} \\
& =x \lambda P_{n+1}+P_{n+1}+\lambda Q_{n+1}+\lambda P_{n}+Q_{n}
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus

$$
\begin{gathered}
P_{n+2}=x P_{n+1}+P_{n}+Q_{n+1} \\
Q_{n+2}=P_{n+1}+Q_{n}
\end{gathered}
$$

so that, using the same techniques as before, we find

$$
\begin{gathered}
P_{n+3}=x P_{n+2}+P_{n+1}+Q_{n+2} \\
P_{n+1}=x P_{n}+P_{n-1}+Q_{n} \\
P_{n+3}-P_{n+1}=x_{n+2}+P_{n+1}-x P_{n}-P_{n-1}+\left(Q_{n+2}-Q_{n}\right)
\end{gathered}
$$

yielding

$$
P_{n+3}=x P_{n+2}+3 P_{n+1}-x P_{n}-P_{n-1}
$$

which agrees with Eq. (8), particularly result (iii), in [8].

## REFERENCES

1. Verner E. Hoggatt, Jr., "An Application of the Lucas Triangle," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 8, No. 4, Oct. 1970, pp. 360-364.
2. Verner E. Hoggatt, Jr., "Fibonacci Numbers and the Generalized Binomial Coefficients," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 5, No. 4, November 1967, pp. 383-400.
3. Brother Alfred Brousseau, Fibonacci and Related Number Theoretic Tables, Fibonacci Association, San Jose State College, San Jose, California, 1972.
4. Ellen L. King, "Some Fibonacci Inverse Trigonometry," Unpublished Master's Thesis, San Jose State College, San Jose State College, San Jose, Calif., July, 1969.
5. Marjorie Bicknell and Verner E. Hoggatt, Jr., "A Primer for the Fibonacci Numbers: Part IX. To Prove: $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}$ Divides $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{nk}}$," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 9, No. 5, Dec. 1971, pp. 529-536.
6. Mark Feinberg, "Lucas Triangle," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 5, No. 5, Dec. 1967, pp. 486-490.
7. Marjorie Bicknell, "A Primer for the Fibonacci Numbers: Part VII. An Introduction to Fibonacci Polynomials and Their Divisibility Properties," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 8, No. 4, Oct. 1970, pp. 407-420.
8. V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., and D. A. Lind, "Symbolic Substitutions Into Fibonacci Polynomials," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 6, No. 5, Nov. 1968, pp. 55-74.
$\rightarrow \infty$
[Continued from page 554.]

## SOME THEOREMS ON COMPLETENESS

holds true and Theorem 12 is completed.
Corollary. The hypothesis of Theorem 3 is not a necessary condition. From Theorem 7 , clearly $F_{n+1}^{m} \leq 2 F_{n}^{m}$ for $n \geq 3, m \geq 4$, and that the sequence $2^{m-1}$ copies of $F_{n}^{m}$ is complete.

## REFERENCES

1. V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., and C. H. King, Problem E-1424, American Math. Monthly, Problem p. 593, Vol. 67, June-July 1960.
2. John L. Brown, Jr., "Note on Complete Sequences," American Math. Monthly, Vol. 68, June-July 1961, pp. 557-561.
3. W. Sierpiñski, Theory of Numbers, 1964, p. 137.
4. John L. Brown, Jr., "A Generalization of Semi-Completeness for Integer Sequences," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 1, No. 1 (1963), pp. 3-15.
5. Roger O'Connell, Unpublished thesis, San Jose State College, San Jose, Calif., Jan. 1970, p. 115.
6. Roger O'Connell, "Representation of Integers as Sums of Fibonacci Squares," Fibonacci Quarterly, Vol. 10, No. 1 (1972), pp. 103-112.

[^0]:    * Supported in part by NSF Grant GP-17031.

[^1]:    * Supported in part by NSF Grant GP-17031.

[^2]:    * Supported in part by NSF Grant GP-7855.

[^3]:    * Supported in part by NSF Grant GP-17031.

[^4]:    * Supported in part by NSF Grant GP-17031.

[^5]:    * Partially supported by NSF Grant GY9923, Undergraduate Research Participation Program in Mathematics, Summer 1972, University of Santa Clara.

